
AL-BAHER
2024
CONNECT
PLUS
6th
Primary
First Term
Parents' Guide
بتصريح و تحت إشراف
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION



Natural resources موارد طبيعية

coal	فحم	flax	نبات الكتان
salt	ملح	linen	الكتان (قماش)

Adjectives صفات

annoying	مزعج	tired	مُتْعَب
excited	متحمس	frightening	مخيف - مُرعب

Ecosystems نُظُم بيئية

grassland	أرض عشبية	desert	صحراء
forest	غابة	rainforest	غابة مطيرة (استوائية)

Extreme weather الطقس الشديد

thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	hurricane	إعصار
dust storm	عاصفة ترابية	flood	فيضان

Forces القُوى

wheel	عجلة	rope	حبل
spring	زنبرك	hook	خطاف

Free-time activities أنشطة وقت الفراغ

go camping	يذهب للتخييم	go hiking	يذهب للتمشية
go skiing	يذهب للتزلج	play sports	يمارس الرياضة

Jobs in science وظائف علمية

engineer	مهندس	astronaut	رائد فضاء
scientist	عالم	pilot	طيار

Places in a city أماكن في مدينة

aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	harbour	مرفأ - ميناء
planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية	ruins	أطلال - بقايا

Help your child revise these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

skateboarding	التزلج (على الألواح)	beauty	جمال
hiking	جولة على الأقدام	origami	فن طي الورق (الأوريجامي)
natural wonders	عجائب طبيعية	put up a tent	ينصب خيمة

Notes:

who (الذي - التي) للعاقل

e.g. This is the boy who is very good at English.

enjoy يستمتع بـ

enjoy + noun / (v + ing)

e.g. I enjoy English classes at school very much.

- He enjoys reading short stories.

go + (v + ing) يمارس نشاط

e.g. She goes swimming on Fridays.

anyone / anybody / anything تأتي في السؤال والنفي

e.g. Did you see anyone in the class?

- I didn't find anything to eat.

everybody الجميع "للأشخاص" / **everything** كل شيء

e.g. Everybody is at school.

e.g. I enjoyed everything at the party.

too جدًا - لدرجة أن لا

too + adj. + to + inf.

e.g. The tea is too hot to drink.

Request الطلب

Will + subject + inf. ...?

e.g. Will you help me do my homework?

Help your child revise these language notes.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع هذه الملاحظات اللغوية.

Lesson (1)

"If" Zero Conditional

"إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

If / When + present simple , present simple or imperative "جملة أمر"

- If you don't want to sleep, read a good book.
- When a volcano erupts, fire and rocks come out of the top.
- When you go down the hill, the bike moves.
- When you boil water, it turns from a liquid to a gas.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I have a friend .... is very good at skateboarding.
   a) who b) which c) where d) when
2. These photos show people the .... of the desert.
   a) beautiful b) beauty c) ugly d) pretty
3. I really enjoy .... time outside with my friends in the summer.
   a) spent b) spends c) spend d) spending
4. I have to do a project about a natural wonder. Will you .... me?
   a) help b) to help c) helping d) helped
5. I love this café. .... I've tried here is delicious!
   a) Anybody b) Everybody c) Everyone d) Everything
6. Do you like .... hiking?
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
7. Do you know .... who can put up a tent?
   a) anybody b) anything c) everyone d) everybody

8. It's .... early to get up, go back to sleep!

a) many b) such c) enough d) too

9. When you .... water, it turns into a gas.

a) boil b) boiled c) boiling d) boils

10. The bike moves .... you go down the hill.

a) if b) but c) so d) before

2 Read and match.

1. Adjectives	a. astronaut, pilot
2. Ecosystems	b. flood, thunderstorm
3. Jobs in science	c. tired, frightening
4. Extreme weather	d. forest, desert
	e. spring, wheel

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. of - photos - Can - the ruins - take - you - ?

....

2. in - Is - a bright - sleep - room - easy to - it - ?

....

3. salad - yet - Have - the - made - they - ?

....

4. going - like - Do - you - shopping - ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

LET'S REMEMBER

Lesson (2)

Vocabulary

المفردات

heart	قلب	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	nocturnal animals	حيوانات ليلية
brakes	فرامل	renewable natural resource	مورد طبيعي متجدد
archery	الرماية	wrestling	المصارعة
Earth	الأرض	slow down	يهدأ (من سرعة)
sense of hearing	حاسة السمع	blood	دم
airplanes	طائرات	project	مشروع
definitely	بالتأكيد	popular	مشهور - محبوب
find out	يكتشف	interview	مقابلة شخصية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
be	يكون	was / were	been
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made
tell	يخبر	told	told

The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Form التكوين

Subject + have / has + P.P

e.g. I **have eaten** a pizza.

She**'s seen** her friends.

Negative النفي

Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P

e.g. I **haven't met** the king.

She **hasn't eaten** pizza.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

Have / Has + subject + P.P ....?

e.g. **Have** you **fixed** the car yet?
Has Ali **been** to France?

Wh– question

Q.W + have / has + subject + P.P ....?

e.g. **Where have** you **been**?
When has Sara **arrived**?

Sequence connectors

روابط التتابع (التسلسل)

First	أولًا	Then	ثم	Finally	في النهاية

e.g. **First,** I went to the library.
Then, I found an interesting book.
Finally, I borrowed it to read at home.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Have you .... to India?
   a) be b) being c) to be d) been
2. Have you .... koshari?
   a) make b) made c) makes d) making
3. Have you .... your dad about your test score?
   a) tell b) tells c) told d) telling

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4. Amina wanted to find .... how to be an astronaut.

a) in b) out c) of d) with

5. Amina found a/an .... with an astronaut in a magazine.

a) view b) views c) interview d) interviewer

6. Football is the most .... sport in my class.

a) unknown b) popular c) informal d) unpopular

2 Read and match.

1. Your heart is important because it
2. Solar energy is
3. People in Ancient Egypt
4. It takes 28 days for the moon
5. Nocturnal animals have
6. You need to use your brakes

a. a renewable natural resource.
b. enjoyed swimming, archery, and wrestling.
c. to go around the Earth.
d. to slow your bike down.
e. a very good sense of hearing.
f. moves blood around your body.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( ) 5- ( ) 6- ( )

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Australia - have - I - to - been - .

....

2. my birthday - I - is - feel - when - excited - it - .

....

3. an - be - I - to - astronaut - want - .

....

4. very happy - got 100% - My dad - I - that - was - .

....

Unit 1

Express yourself!

Having fun and being creative!

In this unit, the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

- talk about different creative activities. يتحدث عن الأنشطة الإبداعية المختلفة.
- understand and use the zero conditional. يفهم ويستخدم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية.
- listen to and understand an interview. يستمع إلى مقابلة شخصية ويفهمها
- understand and use prepositional phrases. يفهم ويستخدم عبارات حروف الجر.
- read and understand a poem. يقرأ ويفهم قصيدة.
- read and understand an article. يقرأ ويفهم مقالاً.
- write a report using time clauses and sequencing. يكتب تقرير باستخدام الجمل الزمنية والتسلسل
- read and understand a story. يقرأ ويفهم قصة.

Lesson (1) HOW CREATIVE ARE YOU?

Key vocabulary

مفردات رئيسية


junk modeling
صناعة مجسمات من المخلفات


making jewelery
صناعة المجوهرات


outdoor art
الفن الخارجي


pottery
صناعة الأواني الفخارية


computer animation
رسوم متحركة بالكمبيوتر


sculpture
فن النحت


making collage
تصميم الملصقات "فن الكولاج"


designing clothes
تصميم ملابس

Extra vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

competition	مسابقة	poem	قصيدة
creative	مبدع	skill	مهارة
exhibition	معرض	clay	صلصال - طين
museum	متحف	planet	كوكب
painting	لوحة	material	مادة خام
cardboard box	صندوق ورق مقوى "كرتونه"	wood	خشب
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	stone	حجر
beads	خرز	leaves	أوراق شجر
bracelet	سوار	bowl	سلطانية
lids	أغطية الأوعية	vase	زهرية
necklace	عقد / قلادة	shells	أصداف

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
appear	يظهر	appeared	appeared
express	يُعبّر	expressed	expressed
design	يصمم	designed	designed
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled	recycled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
show	يعرض / يبين	showed	shown
send	يرسل	sent	sent
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
find	يجد	found	found

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

How creative are you?	ما مدى إبداعك؟
a bit of everything	القليل من كل شيء
to get you excited	تثير حماسك
save money	يدخر مال
make your own clothes	تصنع الملابس الخاصة بك
enter the competition	يدخل المسابقة
creative activities	أنشطة إبداعية
in the outside world	في العالم الخارجي
prefer using technology	يفضل استخدام التكنولوجيا
getting your hands messy	تتسخ يداك
creative work	عمل إبداعي

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Show your creativity! أظهر إبداعك!

Enter our fun new competition and show us how creative you are!

أدخل مسابقتنا الجديدة الممتعة وبين لنا مدى إبداعك!

We want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send us their creative work. Your work will appear in a big art **exhibition** in the city museum.

نريد أن يرسل لنا الأطفال الذين تتراوح أعمارهم بين خمسة وخمسة عشر عاما أعمالهم الإبداعية. سيظهر عملك في معرض فني كبير في متحف المدينة.

There are so many different ways you can express yourself. You could send us a painting, a photo, a poem, or a story. Or why not try something new? Here are some ideas for different creative activities to get you excited!

هناك العديد من الطرق المختلفة التي يمكنك من خلالها التعبير عن نفسك. يمكنك أن ترسل لنا لوحة أو صورة أو قصيدة أو قصة. أو لماذا لا تجرب شيئا جديدا؟ إليك بعض الأفكار للأنشطة الإبداعية المختلفة ستثير حماسك!

Junk modeling: What can you make with a cardboard box? Plastic bottles and **lids**? Try junk modeling! Use your creative and design skills to build a rocket, a ship, a car, or a house.

صناعة المجسمات من المخلفات: ماذا يمكنك أن تصنع من صندوق من الورق المقوى؟ الزجاجات والأغطية البلاستيكية؟ جرب صناعة المجسمات! استخدم مهاراتك الإبداعية والتصميمية لبناء صاروخ أو سفينة أو سيارة أو منزل.

Pottery: Do you like getting your hands messy? Then try pottery! Use **clay** to make a bowl, a cup, or a vase.

صناعة الفخار: هل تحب أن تتسخ يداك؟ إذا جرب الفخار! استخدم الطين لعمل وعاء أو كوب أو مزهرية.

Designing clothes: If you can't find anything you want to wear, how about designing and making your own clothes? You can use recycled cloth to save money and help the planet.

تصميم الملابس: إذا لم تتمكن من العثور على ما تريد ارتداءه، ماذا عن تصميم وصنع ملابسك الخاصة؟ يمكنك استخدام القماش المعاد تدويره لتوفير المال ومساعدة الكوكب.

Making a collage: If you can't decide what to use in your project, use a bit of everything! You could make a beautiful collage with material, paint, and colored paper.

تصميم الملصقات "الكولاج": إذا لم تتمكن من تحديد ما يجب استخدامه في مشروعك ، فاستخدم القليل من كل شيء! يمكنك أن تصنع ملصقات جميلة باستخدام المواد ، والطلاء ، والورق الملون.

Making jewelry: Use **beads** to make beautiful jewelry, for example, necklaces or bracelets.
صناعة المجوهرات: استخدم الخرز لصنع مجوهرات جميلة ، على سبيل المثال ، قلادات أو أساور.

Sculpture: You could use wood, clay, or stone to make a sculpture of an animal, a person, or a completely new shape.
النحت: يمكنك استخدام الخشب أو الطين أو الحجر لعمل تمثال لحيوان أو شخص أو شكل جديد تماما.

Outdoor art: Use the things you find around you in the outside world, for example, leaves or shells to make some outdoor art.
الفن الخارجي: استخدم الأشياء التي تجدها من حولك في العالم الخارجي ، على سبيل المثال ، أوراق الشجر أو الأصداف لعمل بعض الأعمال الفنية الخارجية.

Computer animation: If you prefer using technology, you could use your computer skills to make an **animation**. Moving pictures can tell a great story!
الرسوم المتحركة بالكمبيوتر: إذا كنت تفضل استخدام التكنولوجيا ، فيمكنك استخدام مهارات الكمبيوتر الخاصة بك لإنشاء رسوم متحركة. الصور المتحركة يمكن أن تحكي قصة رائعة!

There are so many things you can do! How do you like to express yourself?
هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكنك القيام بها! كيف تحب أن تعبر عن نفسك؟

Notes:

so "shows the results" لذلك "تبين النتيجة"

e.g. Recycling is important, so I would do junk modeling.

because "shows reasons" لأن "تبين السبب"

e.g. I would make outdoor art because I like collecting shells.

Asking about creative activities



Which creative activities do you think are easy?
ما الأنشطة الإبداعية التي تعتقد أنها سهلة؟

I think outdoor art and junk modeling are easy.
أعتقد أن الفن الخارجي وصناعة المجسمات سهلة.

Which creative activities do you think are difficult?
ما الأنشطة الإبداعية التي تعتقد أنها صعبة؟

I think pottery and sculpture are difficult.
أعتقد أن الفخار والنحت أنشطة صعبة.

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You could use your computer .... if you like technology.
   a) mouse b) keyboard c) scanner d) skills
2. You could use your computer to make a/an ....
   a) movie b) animation c) story d) exhibition
3. Making pictures can tell you a great ....
   a) story b) poem c) time d) word
4. There are many things you can .... to express yourself.
   a) make b) do c) play d) stay

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What could you use to make a sculpture of an animal? ....
2. In which activity could you use leaves or shells? ....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

exhibition - creative - painting - children - art

We want 1)...................... between the ages of five and fifteen to send us their 2)...................... work. Your work will appear in a big art 3)...................... in the city museum. There are so many different ways you can express yourself. You could send us a 4)...................... , a photo, a poem, or a story.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can use .... or shells in outdoor art.
   a) leaves b) cloth c) clay d) beads
2. To make jewelry, you can use different colored ....
   a) clay b) beads c) linen d) cloth
3. You could use plastic bottles or a .... box in junk modeling.
   a) cloth b) sand c) cardboard d) clay

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4. Wood or .... are good things to use for sculptures.
 a) **glass** b) **plastic** c) **cloth** d) **clay**

5. You could use a .... to make an animation.
 a) **computer** b) **radio** c) **TV** d) **fridge**

6. If you design clothes, you can save money by using recycled ....
 a) **beads** b) **cloth** c) **clay** d) **jewelery**

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many activities you can do to show your creativity. Here are some of them. **Junk modeling:** What can you make with a cardboard box? Plastic bottles and lids? Try junk modeling! Use your creative and design skills to build a rocket, a ship, a car, or a house. **Pottery:** Do you like getting your hands messy? Then try pottery! Use clay to make a bowl, a cup, or a vase. **Designing clothes:** If you can't find anything you want to wear, how about designing and making your own clothes? You can use recycled cloth to save money and help the planet.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We use .... in pottery.
 a) **clay** b) **plastic** c) **beads** d) **glass**

2. You can use recycled cloth to .... money.
 a) **make** b) **cut** c) **save** d) **wear**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. In which activity can you use a cardboard box? ....

4. What can you make in pottery? ....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. make - a cardboard - What - box - can - with - you - ?
....

2. like - I - make - to - a collage - .
....

Vocabulary
المفردات

competition	مسابقة	environment	البيئة
sunhat	قبعة شمس	luckily	لحسن الحظ

Definitions
تعريفات

messy	not clean or tidy	فوضوي - متسخ
disappear	to go away; you can't see it any more	يختفي
uncomfortable	not feeling nice on your skin	غير مريح
relaxing	making you happy and not worried	مريح

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
mix	يخلط	mixed	mixed
paint	يلون	painted	painted
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	disappeared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
meet	يقابل	met	met
set	يضبط (الساعة)	set	set
leave	يترك / يغادر	left	left

Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

That looks good.	هذا يبدو جيدًا.	feel better	يشعر بتحسن
with my hands	بيديّ	I suppose you are right.	أعتقد أنك على حق.
set an alarm	يضبط المنبه	good at / bad at	جيد في / سيء في

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Noha : Have you heard about this competition, Hesham? It's for any kind of creative project. I'd like to enter.

هل سمعت عن هذه المسابقة، يا هشام؟ إنها لأي نوع من المشاريع الإبداعية. أود أن أدخلها.

Hesham : Oh wow, that looks good. What are you going to make?

أوه، هذا جيد. ماذا سوف تصنعين؟

Noha : I don't know. My favorite activity is painting. I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

لا أعرف. نشاطي المفضل هو الرسم. أشعر دائمًا بالسعادة عندما أرسم. إذا كنت حزينة ، أرسم. ثم أشعر بتحسن.

Hesham : Hmm. If I paint, I don't feel happy. I'm not very good at it!

همم. إذا قمت بالرسم ، لا أشعر بالسعادة. أنا لست جيدًا جدًا في ذلك!

Noha : Yes, you are! Anyway, no one is bad at a creative project. You can do or make anything you like. There's no right or wrong!

بلى ، أنت جيد! على أي حال ، لا أحد سيء في مشروع إبداعي. يمكنك أن تفعل أو تصنع أي شيء تحبه. ليس هناك صواب أو خطأ!

Hesham : I prefer making things with my hands. I like sculpture or junk modeling, but my favorite is pottery. I think it's really relaxing!

أنا أفضل صنع الأشياء بيدي. أحب النحت أو صناعة المجسمات، لكن المفضل لدي هو صناعة الفخار. أعتقد أنه مريح حقا!

Noha : Oh, I don't agree. I don't like pottery because I don't like getting my hands messy. I think it's really uncomfortable to have clay on my hands.

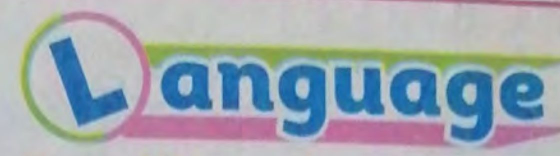
أوه ، أنا لا أوافق. أنا لا أحب الفخار لأنني لا أحب أن تتسخ يداي. أعتقد أنه من غير المريح حقًا أن يكون لدي طين على يدي.

Hesham : But if you paint, you get paint on your hands.

ولكن إذا قمت بالرسم ، سوف يقع الطلاء على يديك.

Noha : Well, yes, I suppose you're right. Luckily, the paint disappears quickly when I wash them!

حسنًا ، نعم ، أعتقد أنك على حق. لحسن الحظ ، يختفي الطلاء بسرعة عندما أغسلهم!



(If) Zero Conditional

"إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the zero conditional to talk about facts or things that are usually true for us. نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق أو أشياء عادة ما تكون صحيحة بالنسبة لنا.

If / When + present simple , present simple or can

e.g. If you paint, you get paint on your hands.

If I go to bed late, I can't wake up in the morning.

present simple or can + if + present simple

e.g. You get paint on your hands if you paint.

I can't wake up in the morning if I go to bed late.

- We also use the zero conditional to give instructions or make suggestions.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية لإعطاء التعليمات وعمل الاقتراحات.

If / When + present simple , imperative "جملة أمر"

e.g. If it starts to rain, use an umbrella.

When you arrive at school, come to the classroom.

Imperative + if / when + present simple

e.g. Use an umbrella if it starts to rain.

- Come to the classroom when you arrive at school.

Notes:

إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ (If / When) نضع (,) comma بين الجملتين.

e.g. If I do something good, I feel happy.

أما إذا جاءت if / when في منتصف الجملة فلا نضع (,) comma.

e.g. I feel happy if I do something good.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I always .... happy when I'm painting
   a) feel b) feels c) felt d) will feel
2. If I paint, I .... happy
   a) doesn't feel b) don't feel c) isn't feeling d) am feeling
3. If you paint, you .... paint on your hands
   a) get b) gets c) got d) getting
4. You can make green if you .... blue and yellow
   a) mix b) mixes c) mixed d) mixing
5. If she .... her brush in water, she cleans it
   a) put b) puts c) putting d) will put
6. If it rains, ... an umbrella
   a) use b) uses c) used d) using
7. If I go to bed late, I can't .... up in the morning
   a) wake b) wakes c) woke d) waking

2 Correct the underlined word.

1. If you leave your painting for about an hour, the paint dry. (..........
2. If you use recycled paper, you could help the environment. (..........
3. If you are free, visiting us. (..........
4. When you arrives at school, come to the classroom. (..........
5. We gets green if we mix blue and yellow. (..........

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Noha feels .... when she's painting.
   a) happy b) sad c) tired d) bored
2. If Noha is sad, she ....
   a) runs b) eats c) paints d) washes
3. Hesham isn't good at ....
   a) swimming b) singing c) painting d) running
4. Hesham likes .... and junk modeling.
   a) outdoor art b) animation c) animals d) sculpture

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

feels - creative - feel - painting - competition

Noha : Have you heard about this 1)........................, Hesham? It's for any kind of creative project. I'd like to enter.

Hesham : Oh wow, that looks good. What are you going to make?

Noha : I don't know. My favorite activity is 2).......................... I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

Hesham : Hmm. If I paint, I don't 3)........................ happy. I'm not very good at it!

Noha : Yes, you are! Anyway, no one is bad at a 4)........................ project. You can do or make anything you like. There's no right or wrong!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If I do something creative, I .... happy.
   a) feel b) felt c) feels d) feeling
2. When you go for a walk, you can .... things for outdoor art.
   a) find b) finding c) found d) finds

3. When I meet my friends, we .... animation.

a) make b) made c) makes d) making

4. If she has clay, she can .... pottery to give her friends.

a) make b) makes c) made d) making

5. If you want to get up early, you can .... an alarm.

a) set b) setting c) sets d) to set

6. When you go to the beach, ... a sunhat.

a) taking b) take c) takes d) took

4 Read and match.

1. messy
2. disappear
3. uncomfortable
4. relaxing

a. making you happy and not worried
b. to go away; you can't see it any more
c. not clean or tidy
d. not feeling nice on your skin

5 Correct the underlined word.

1. If you mix blue and yellow, you can <u>makes</u> green. (..........)
2. If you <u>mixing</u> red and blue, you don't make pink. You make purple. (..........)
3. If you put your brush in water, you <u>cleaned</u> it. (..........)
4. If you <u>leaves</u> your paintings for about an hour, the paint dries. (..........)
5. If you <u>used</u> recycled paper, you can help the environment. (..........)

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. feel - paints - <u>How</u> - does - she - Noha - when - ?

....

2. doesn't - <u>Why</u> - like - Noha - poetry - ?

....

3. it - <u>If</u> - use - an umbrella - rain, - to - starts - .

Lesson (3) A NIGHT OF COLORS

Key vocabulary مفردات رئيسية

poem (n)	قصيدة	forest (n)	غابة
together (adv)	معًا / مع بعض	painting (n)	لوحة
beads (n)	خرز	bang (n)	فرقعة
blasts (n)	انفجارات	lights (n)	أضواء
verse (n)	مقطع (شعر)	bright (adj)	ساطع / لامع
rhyme (n)	قافية - يتطابق في القافية	day (n)	نهار
jewels (n)	مجوهرات	brilliantly (adv)	بتألق
fireworks (n)	ألعاب نارية	line (n)	بيت شعر
concert (n)	حفل موسيقي	poet (n)	شاعر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
shout	يصيح	shouted	shouted
cheer	يهتف / يهلل	cheered	cheered
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched
dance	يرقص	danced	danced
fill	يملأ	filled	filled
explode	ينفجر	exploded	exploded
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
stand	يقف	stood	stood
shoot	يُطلق	shot	shot
fly	يطير	flew	flown
burn	يحرق	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
shine	يسطع	shone	shone
hold	يمسك	held	held

Definitions تعريفات

a verse	is a part of the poem.	مقطع من القصيدة
a rhyme	is when two words sound the same at the end of the word.	قافية

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in the cold, black night	في الليلة المظلمة الباردة	flash of light	وميض من الضوء
far away	بعيد	hold our breath	نحبس أنفاسنا
quiet and still	هادئ وساكن	a part of	جزء من
as bright as day	ساطعة مثل النهار	look like	يبدو مثل / يُشبه
shoot up into	ينطلق في	take off	تقلع الطائرة / يخلع / ينطلق
fill my ears	يملأ آذاني	see them dance	نراهم يرقصون
make the sky bright	تجعل السماء ساطعة	watching them fly	نشاهدهم يطيرون
Bang!	فرقعة!		

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

A Night of Colors

We stand together in the cold, black night,
The sky is dark and far away.
Everything is quiet and still, until – **BANG!**
The lights make the sky as bright as day.

Rockets shoot up into the air,
We shout and cheer, watching them fly.
Colors burn brilliantly against the black,
We see them dance happily through the sky.

The sound fills my ears, as each rocket takes off,
Exploding noisily with flashes of light.
Beads of red, yellow, silver, and gold,
Are beautiful jewels in the black night.

With blasts so loud and rockets up high,
A colorful fire against the stars.
The sky shines brightly with light and color,
We hold our breath, looking out far.



A Read and match.

1.	The sky	a.	our breath.
2.	Rockets	b.	fills my ears.
3.	The sound	c.	shines brightly.
4.	We hold	d.	shoot up.

B Answer the following questions.

1. How many verses are there in the poem? ....
2. How many lines are in each verse? ....
3. How many words in each verse rhyme? ....

Tip!

In a poem, the poet sometimes uses words or something that is not real to help the reader imagine the way something real looks. For example, the fireworks in the sky are not really jewels, but they are so beautiful that they look like jewels.

في القصيدة، يستخدم الشاعر أحيانًا كلمات أو شيء غير حقيقي لمساعدة القارئ على تخيل الطريقة التي يبدو بها الشيء الحقيقي. على سبيل المثال ، الألعاب النارية في السماء ليست جواهر حقًا ، لكنها جميلة جدًا لدرجة أنها تبدو مثل المجوهرات.

e.g. *Beads of red, yellow, silver, and gold,*
Are beautiful jewels in the black night.
There aren't real jewels in the sky, but the colors in the sky look like jewels.
لا يوجد جواهر حقيقية في السماء ولكن الألوان في السماء تشبه الجواهر.

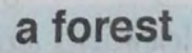
Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

When you want to write a poem, you make a chart like the following:

Topic: Fireworks	
Adjectives	bright, cold, black, dark, quiet, beautiful
Adverbs	brilliantly, happily, noisily, brightly
Verbs	shoot up, shout, cheer, dance, shine

- Choose a topic and complete the chart.

the sea



a forest





Topic	
Adjectives	
Adverbs	
Verbs	

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is the weather like at night? ....

2. What do the lights make the sky? ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The sky shines ....
   a) noisily b) brightly c) brilliant d) happily
2. Rockets shoot .... into the air.
   a) up b) down c) through d) at
3. The .... fills my ears.
   a) taste b) touch c) sound d) sight
4. We hold our .... when we see the fireworks.
   a) bags b) books c) pens d) breath
5. A .... is a part of the poem.
   a) rhyme b) sentence c) verse d) word
6. A .... is when two words sound the same at the end of the word.
   a) sentence b) word c) verse d) rhyme

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. take - Rockets - noisily - off - with - of light - flashes - .

....

2. shines - sky - The - brightly - .

....

3. is - The sky - dark - far away - and - .

....

4. them - happily - We - dance - see - .

....

Lesson (4) BEAUTIFUL SCULPTURES

Key vocabulary مفردات رئيسية

sculptor	نحات	irregular	غير منتظم
sculptures	منحوتات	bubbles	فقاعات
materials	مواد خام	damage	تلف / ضرر
stainless steel	فولاذ مقاوم للصدأ	reflect	يعكس
sphere	كرة	sight	مشهد / مَعْلَم
shiny	ساطع / لامع		

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

interesting shapes	أشكال مُثيرة للاهتمام	all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	is made of	مصنوع من
a piece of	قطعة من	look like	يُشبه
for public places	للأماكن العامة	for a long time	لفترة طويلة
good for	جيد لـ	over the years	على مر السنين

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
move	ينتقل	moved	moved
study	يدرس	studied	studied
arrange	يرتب	arranged	arranged
float	يطفو	floated	floated
stay	يظل - يبقى	stayed	stayed
damage	يُتلف	damaged	damaged
reflect	يعكس	reflected	reflected

Help your child identify these words.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
stand	يقف	stood	stood
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant

Definitions
تعريفات

bubble	a liquid ball full of air	فقاعة
sphere	the shape of a ball	كرة
irregular	not following a pattern	غير منتظم
reflect	when a mirror shows an image	يعكس
material	what something is made from, for example, gold, clay, wood	مادة خام
sculptor	a person who makes sculptures	نحات

Listen and read.
استمع واقرأ

Anish Kapoor's sculptures

Anish Kapoor is a **sculptor**. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different **materials**. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world.


Tall Tree and the Eye

أنيش كابور نحات، ولد في الهند عام ١٩٥٤ ، وانتقل إلى لندن، في المملكة المتحدة ، لدراسة الفن في عام ١٩٧٣. يحب استخدام أشكال جديدة ومثيرة للاهتمام وكذلك مواد مختلفة. يصنع كابور قطع فنية كبيرة جدًا للأماكن العامة ، ويمكن للناس رؤية فنه في جميع أنحاء العالم.

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain.

"الشجرة الطويلة والعين" هو قطعة نحت شهيرة صنعها أنيش كابور. تقع خارج متحف غوغنهايم في بلباو بإسبانيا.

This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or **spheres**.
يبلغ طول هذا التمثال حوالي ١٣ مترا، وهو مصنوع من ٧٣ كرة فولاذ المقاوم للصدأ ، أو كرات.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at *Tall Tree and the Eye*, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an **irregular** pattern. This makes them look like **bubbles** which are floating!
الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ لامع للغاية ، لذلك عندما تنظر إلى الشجرة الطويلة والعين ، يمكنك رؤية وجهك عدة مرات. رُتبت الكرات في نمط غير منتظم. هذا يجعلها تبدو وكأنها فقاعات تطفو!

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.
كابور فنان عظيم. يفهم الرياضيات جيدًا ، كما أنه يفهم المواد الخام. هذا يعني أنه يمكنه صنع منحوتات ستبقى في مكانها لفترة طويلة.

For example, in *Tall Tree and the Eye*, Kapoor uses stainless steel because it is a very strong material. It's very good for outdoor sculptures because it stays shiny, and bad weather doesn't damage it.
على سبيل المثال ، في الشجرة الطويلة والعين ، يستخدم كابور الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ لأنه مادة قوية جدًا. إنه جيد جدًا للمنحوتات الخارجية لأنه يظل لامعًا ، والطقس السيئ لا يتلفه.

Over the years, Kapoor has made many other famous sculptures. Another famous Kapoor sculpture is *Cloud Gate*. You can see it in Chicago,USA.
على مر السنين ، صنع كابور العديد من المنحوتات الشهيرة الأخرى. تمثال آخر شهير بكابور هو بوابة السحابة. يمكنك رؤيته في شيكاغو ، بالولايات المتحدة الأمريكية.

Cloud Gate

Cloud Gate is very high – people can even walk under it! It is also made of stainless steel, which **reflects** the sky, the buildings, and the people around it, like a huge mirror. It is a very popular sight to visit in Chicago.
منحوت بوابة السحابة عالي جدًا - يمكن للناس حتى المشي تحته! كما أنه مصنوعة من الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ الذي يعكس السماء والمباني والأشخاص المحيطين به مثل المرآة الضخمة. إنه مشهور جدًا يمكنك زيارته في شيكاغو.



- Read again. Complete the fact file for Tall Tree and the Eye.

FACT FILE

1- **Name:** ....
2- **Sculptor:** ....
3- **Height:** ....
4- **Material:** ....
5- **Location:** ....

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Anish Kapoor is a ....
   a) vet b) doctor c) sculptor d) pilot
2. People can see his art all over the ....
   a) country b) world c) town d) village
3. He moved to London to study ....
   a) art b) math c) history d) geography
4. He was born in ....
   a) France b) Spain c) America d) India

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who was Tall Tree and the Eye made by? ....
2. How tall is it? ....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Chicago - walk - steel - Gate - Cairo - wood

Cloud 1) .... is very high – people can even 2) .... under it! It is also made of stainless 3)..........., which reflects the sky, the buildings, and the people around it, like a huge mirror. It is a very popular sight to visit in 4)..............

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Anish Kapoor is a/an ....
   a) driver b) pilot c) sculptor d) vet
2. Kapoor was born in ....
   a) Egypt b) Syria c) India d) France
3. Anish moved to London to study ....
   a) Arabic b) Germany c) math d) art
4. Kapoor likes to use different ....
   a) subjects b) strings c) materials d) balloons
5. A .... is the shape of a ball.
   a) sphere b) square c) sculptor d) bubble
6. A .... is a person who makes sculptures.
   a) doctor b) vet c) pilot d) sculptor

7. When we look at the mirrors, it .... our image.
   a) absorbs   b) reflects   c) sends   d) draws
8. A .... is a liquid ball full of air.
   a) designer   b) bubble   c) square   d) sphere

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating! Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tall Tree and the Eye is a ....
   a) story   b) sculpture   c) subject   d) museum
2. The spheres are arranged in a/an .... pattern.
   a) regular   b) ordinary   c) fixed   d) irregular

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Kapoor understand? ....
4. What is the sculpture made of? ....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. can - Gate - People - walk - Cloud - under - .
....
2. from - Anish - Where - Kapoor - is - ?
....

7 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Balloon Dog sculpture

Guiding words:

Name: Balloon Dog
Sculptor: Jeff Koons
Height: 3.5 meters
Material: stainless steel, then painted blue, yellow, or pink
Location: in about 20 different places around the world – there are lots of Balloon Dogs!

Lesson (5)

LANGUAGE

Vocabulary

المفردات

interviewer	محاور	magazine	مجلة
talented	موهوب	theater	مسرح
musician	موسيقار	actor	ممثل
concert	حفل موسيقي	confident	واثق
songs	أغاني	surprised	مندهش
poems	قصائد	later	لاحقًا / في وقت لاحق

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

write a song / poem	يكتب أغنية / قصيدة	through the forest	عبر الغابة
a bit nervous	متوتر قليلًا	on a sunny day	في يوم مشمس
for over an hour	لأكثر من ساعة	look confident	يبدو واثقًا
come into	يدخل	on stage	على خشبة المسرح

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
talk	يتكلم	talked	talked
own	يمتلك	owned	owned
perform	يؤدى / يمثل	performed	performed
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	relaxed
practice	يتدرب	practiced	practiced
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Definitions

تعريفات

stage	the part of a theater where actors act	خشبة المسرح
award	a prize	جائزة
musician	a person whose job is playing music	موسيقار
talented	with a special ability to do something well	موهوب
cello	a kind of musical instrument with strings	آلة التشيلو
perform	show your acting or musical skills to other people	يؤدى / يمثل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Interviewer : Wow, Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so talented!

واو، مازن! الحفل كان مذهلًا! أنت موهوب جدًا!

Mazen : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired **after a concert!**

شكرا جزيلًا! لقد أحببته ، لكنني دائمًا متعب بعد أي حفلة موسيقية!

Interviewer : I'm not surprised. You played the guitar and sang for over an hour!

أنا لست مندهشًا. كنت تعزف على الجيتار وتغني لأكثر من ساعة!

Mazen : It went very quickly. But nobody knew about the problem I had before **the concert!**

لقد مرت بسرعة جدًا. لكن لا أحد يعرف عن المشكلة التي واجهتها قبل الحفل!

Interviewer : A problem – what was that?

مشكلة - ماذا كانت المشكلة؟

Mazen : I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing **in a different room** this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where. I looked everywhere, even **under all the chairs**, but I couldn't find it! Five minutes **before the concert**, my friend came into the room. She saw it **behind the door**. I was very lucky!

لم أجد جيتاري! كنت أتدرب في غرفة مختلفة هذا الصباح ، وضعت جيتاري في مكان ما ، وبعد ذلك نسيت مكانه. بحثت في كل مكان، حتى تحت جميع الكراسي ، لكنني لم أجده! قبل الحفل بخمس دقائق ، دخلت صديقتي إلى الغرفة. ورأته خلف الباب. كنت محظوظًا جدًا!

Answer the following questions.

1. How was Mazen after the concert?

....

2. How long did Mazen play the guitar?

....

3. What was the problem?

....

4. Who found the guitar?

....



Prepositional Phrases

عبارات حروف الجر

1. A prepositional phrase is a group of words beginning with a preposition, and ending with a noun, or pronoun, that the preposition refers to, and sometimes an adjective.

- عبارة حرف الجر هي مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بحرف جر، وتنتهي باسم ، أو ضمير يشير إليه حرف الجر ، و أحيانًا تنتهي بصفة.

2. It doesn't contain a verb.

- لا تحتوي على فعل.

3. It can give information about **where** or **when**.

- يمكن أن تعطي معلومات عن المكان أو الوقت.

4. Prepositions can include:

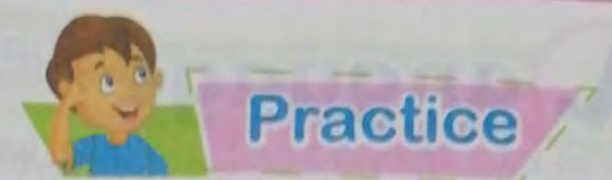
- يمكن أن تشمل حروف الجر:

- after	بعد	- before	قبل	- behind	خلف
- in	في	- into	داخل	- under	تحت
- through	عبر / خلال	- for	لمدة	- on	على

Examples:

- I'm always tired **after** a concert.
- I'm always a bit nervous when I'm **on stage**.
- I try to breathe slowly **before a concert** to help me relax.
- **At your last concert**, you looked very confident.
- I looked **under all the chairs**.
- **On a sunny day**, I play football outside with my friends.

Help your child identify prepositional phrases.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على عبارات حروف الجر.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I always have breakfast .... school
   a) after b) before c) under d) over
2. I have a party .... my birthday
   a) in b) after c) at d) on
3. I was practicing .... a room
   a) in b) over c) on d) for
4. There are a lot of books .... my school bag
   a) below b) under c) after d) in
5. The guitar was .... the door
   a) before b) up c) behind d) into
6. The books are .... the shelf
   a) on b) in c) over d) across
7. The pencils are .... my bag
   a) over b) up c) in d) since

2 Correct the underlined word.

1. What do you do <u>at</u> Friday? (..................)
2. <u>In</u> your last concert, you looked very confident. (..................)
3. He played the guitar <u>since</u> over an hour. (..................)
4. When I opened the door, a cat came <u>up</u> the room. (..................)
5. There's a mouse <u>between</u> my bed. (..................)

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mazen's concert was .... !
   a) bad b) nice c) amazing d) good
2. Mazen is always .... after the concert.
   a) happy b) tired c) sad d) excited
3. He played the ....
   a) guitar b) piano c) cello d) flute
4. He had a problem .... the concert.
   a) after b) under c) before d) while

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

radio - concert - songs - magazine - talented

Mazen is talking to the school 1) .... interviewer. There is going to be a 2) .... next week. Mazen is 3)............... ! He writes his own 4)............. He owns many books about musicians.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... is the part of a theater where actors act.
   a) school b) stage c) cello d) stay
2. I came first in the competition and got a/an ....
   a) party b) price c) award d) word
3. Mazen .... his own songs.
   a) writes b) plays c) acts d) breaks
4. .... means a person with a special ability to do something.
   a) Excited b) Interested c) Talented d) Bored
5. I'm always a bit .... when I'm on stage.
   a) tiring b) nervous c) good d) exciting

6. They are .... for the concert.
   a) sleeping b) writing c) practicing d) staying
7. They are .... musicians. They play music very well.
   a) bad b) talented c) quickly d) fast
8. I'm always tired .... the concert.
   a) up b) after c) under d) on
9. My dad gets up very early .... the morning.
   a) at b) on c) in d) by
10. I looked for my guitar everywhere, even .... the chairs.
    a) at b) over c) next d) under
11. .... your last concert, you looked very confident.
    a) At b) By c) In d) For
12. He played football .... two hours.
    a) to b) for c) since d) after
13. I always have a shower .... school.
    a) at b) after c) during d) when
14. There is going to be a concert .... week.
    a) next b) under c) by d) at
15. We watched actors performing .... stage.
    a) under b) in c) on d) by

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. try - slowly - before - I - to breathe - a concert - .

....

2. go to - On - Fridays - the park - we - .

....

3. do - What - one day - you - to do - hope - ?

....

Lesson (6) WRITING A REPORT

Key vocabulary
مفردات رئيسية

pottery	صناعة الفخار	pottery wheel	عجلة الفخار
lump	كتلة صغيرة	apron	مريلة
clay	صلصال - طين	kiln	فرن

Extra vocabulary
مفردات إضافية

paint	دهان / ألوان	oven	فرن
bowl	سلطانية - وعاء	circles	دوائر
turn	دور	creative	مبدع / إبداعي
hard	صلب	pink	لون وردي / زهري
decorate	يزين	dry	يجف / يجفف

Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work on a project	يعمل على مشروع	put on	يلبس / يرتدي
got messy	أصبحت (فوضويًا / متسخًا)	take out	يُخرج
wait for	ينتظر	make it hard	يجعله صلبًا

Definition
تعريف

kiln a special oven which gets very hot and makes the clay hard and strong
فرن خاص شديد الحرارة يجعل الطين صلبًا وقويًا.

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
work	يعمل	worked	worked
start	يبدأ	started	started
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
make	يصنع - يجعل	made	made

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

My pottery project *by Amal*



1 My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a **lump** of **clay**, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl.

عمل صفي على مشروع الفخار في المدرسة هذا الأسبوع. بدأنا بقطعة من الطين ، واخترنا ما سنصنع. أردت أن أصنع سلطانية / وعاء.



2 First, the teacher showed us how to use a **pottery wheel**. Then it was our turn. We put on **aprons** over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy.

أولًا ، بيّن لنا المعلم كيفية استخدام عجلة الفخار. ثم كان دورنا. ارتدينا مرايل على ملابسنا. عندما وضعت الطين على عجلة الفخار ، دارت بسرعة. كان الأمر صعبا ، وأصبحت متسخة.



3 When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a **kiln**. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.

عندما انتهى وعائي ، وضعه المعلم في فرن. هذا فرن خاص يصبح ساخنًا جدًا. يجعل الطين صلبًا وقويًا.



4 Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to **decorate** my bowl.

أخيرًا ، كان الوعاء جاهزًا وأخرجه المعلم. انتظرنا حتى يبرد الوعاء ، ثم استخدمت طلاء خاصًا لتزيين الوعاء.



5 I painted it pink all over first, and waited for the paint to dry. Then I used different colors of paint to make circles all over it.

لونته باللون الوردي أولًا ، وانتظرت حتى يجف الطلاء. ثم استخدمت ألوانًا مختلفة من الطلاء لعمل دوائر حوله.



6 I really enjoyed making my bowl! When I finished my bowl, I gave it to my mom for her birthday. She loved it!

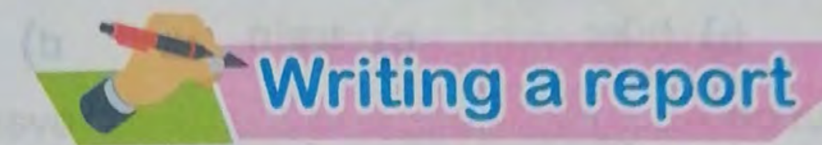
لقد استمتعت حقًا بصنع وعائي! عندما انتهيت من وعائي، أعطيته لأمي في عيد ميلادها. وقد أحبته أمي!

Read the report again and match

1. The children chose
2. Using the pottery wheel was
3. Her bowl went in the kiln
4. Amal painted circles

a. quite messy.
b. to make it hard.
c. on her bowl.
d. what to make.

1- (   ) 2- (   ) 3- (   ) 4- (   )



Parts of a report أجزاء التقرير

title - order - pictures - end

❶ The title: tells readers the topic or subject of the report.

العنوان: يخبر القراء عن موضوع التقرير.

❷ The report has a beginning, a middle, and an end. It explains what happened and what order it happened in.

يحتوي التقرير على بداية ووسط ونهاية. وهي تشرح ماذا حدث وما الترتيب الذي حدثت فيه.

❸ The pictures make the report look interesting, and help the reader imagine.

الصور تجعل التقرير يبدو شيقًا وتساعد القارئ على التخيل.

❹ We can use When to talk about the order in which things happen. Both parts are in the same tense.

يمكن استخدام When للحديث عن الترتيب الذي تحدث فيه الأشياء. كلا الجزأين يكونان في نفس الزمن.

e.g. When my bowl was finished, my teacher put it in a kiln.
When the children get a lump of clay, they choose what to make.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The class worked on a .... project.
   a) pottery b) glass c) wood d) candle
2. The children got a .... of clay.
   a) cup b) lump c) bag d) bar
3. The girl put the clay on the pottery ....
   a) whale b) bike c) train d) wheel
4. The children put on .... over their clothes.
   a) shirts b) dresses c) aprons d) skirts

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

decorate - soft - hard - wheel - kettle - kiln

I wanted to make a bowl. First the teacher showed us how to use a pottery 1) .... When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a 2) .... It makes the clay 3) .... and strong. Finally, I use special paint to 4) .... my bowl.

3 Write a report of 60 words about:

Making candles project

Guiding words:

(wax - melt - cups - perfume - wick - pour - hard - light)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (7) STORY: BEHIND THE CAMERA

Key vocabulary
مفردات رئيسية

costumes	أزياء	exhibition	معرض
play	مسرحية	choir	كورال / مجموعة مغنيين
advertisement	إعلان	edit	يحرر / يعدّل (الصورة)
photography	فن التصوير الفوتوغرافي	worried	قلق

Extra vocabulary
مفردات إضافية

audience	الجمهور	instrument	آلة موسيقية
shadow	الظل	chance	فرصة
cupboard	دولاب (مطبخ)	photographer	مصور
shelf	رف	lines	كلمات دور الممثل
buttons	أزرار	website	موقع إلكتروني

Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

play the piano	يعزف البيانو	walk past	يمشي ماراً بـ
make costumes	يصنع الأزياء	on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
write a play	يكتب مسرحية	at the side of	على جانب
on the way home	في الطريق إلى البيت	Well done.	أحسنت.

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
act	يمثل	acted	acted
express	يُعبِّر	expressed	expressed
say	يقول	said	said
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Definitions
تعريفات

choir	a group of people who sing together	كورال
edit	to change photos to make them better	يحرر
play	a story that you watch at the theater	مسرحية
advertisement	this tells people about an event, so they want to see it	إعلان
photography	the activity or job of taking photographs	التصوير الفوتوغرافي
exhibition	a group of artwork in one place for people to see	معرض
costumes	special clothes that people wear at festival or on stage	أزياء

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Behind the camera

خلف الكاميرا



It was two weeks until the school show, and everybody was excited. Everybody except Magdy.
"I'm going to play the piano," said Waleed.
"The choir is going to sing beautiful songs," said Nesma. "And I'm going to make costumes for the choir," said Dalia.
"I've written a funny play!" said Samir.

كان متبقى أسبوعان على عرض المدرسة، وكان الجميع متحمسين. الجميع ما عدا مجدي. قال وليد:"سأعزف على البيانو". وقالت نسمه"سيقوم الكورال بغناء أغاني جميلة"، . قالت داليا "وانا سأقوم بصنع أزياء الكورال"، . قال سمير "لقد كتبت مسرحية مضحكة!".

Magdy was worried. He didn't go to piano lessons, and he didn't like singing. "What am I going to do?" he thought. On the way home, Magdy walked past the museum. There was an advertisement for a photography exhibition. A black and-white photo showed a man playing the piano on stage, with the audience in the shadow. "That's amazing," thought Magdy. It felt like he was there, listening to the music.

كان مجدي قلقًا. لم يذهب إلى دروس العزف على البيانو ، ولم يكن يحب الغناء. كان يفكر "ماذا سأفعل؟". في طريق العودة إلى المنزل، مر مجدي على المتحف. كان هناك إعلانًا عن معرض للتصوير الفوتوغرافي. وكان هناك صورة بالأبيض والأسود لرجل يعزف البيانو على خشبة المسرح ، وبها الجمهور في الظل. فكر مجدي "هذا مذهل" . شعر أنه كان هناك، يستمع إلى الموسيقى.

At home, Magdy started looking in cupboards. "What are you doing?" asked Mom. "Dad has a good camera, doesn't he? Do you know where it is?" asked Magdy. "Yes," said Mom, taking a box from a shelf. "He hasn't used it for a long time. Are you studying photography at school?"
"No, but I'll learn!" Magdy said.

في المنزل، بدأ مجدي يبحث في الدواليب. سألته والدته "ماذا تفعل؟". سأل مجدي "أبي كان لديه كاميرا جيدة، أليس كذلك؟ هل تعرفين أين هى؟". قالت والدته ، وهي تأخذ صندوقًا من الرف. "نعم، لم يستخدمها لفترة طويلة. هل تدرس التصوير في المدرسة؟" قال مجدي "لا ، لكنني سأتعلم!".

Magdy found his dad's photography books. He read about the different buttons on the camera. Then he learned how to edit the photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker.

وجد مجدي كتب التصوير الخاصة بوالده. قرأ عن الأزرار المختلفة على الكاميرا. ثم تعلم كيفية تحرير الصور على الكمبيوتر لجعلها افتح أو اغمق.

Magdy was excited. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography exhibition. After the exhibition, they went into the city and Magdy took photos of things he saw.

كان مجدي متحمسا. في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ، أخذته والدته ووالده إلى معرض للتصوير الفوتوغرافي. بعد المعرض، ذهبوا إلى المدينة والتقط مجدي صورا لأشياء رآها.

Finally, Magdy spoke to his teacher. "Miss Salwa, I'm worried. I don't like being on stage. I don't like singing or acting, and I can't play an instrument." "Magdy, this is a chance for you to do something you enjoy, to express yourself. Can you think of something?" said his teacher.

أخيراً، تحدث مجدي إلى معلمته. وقال: أستاذة سلوى، أنا قلق. لا أحب أن أكون على خشبة المسرح. لا أحب الغناء أو التمثيل، ولا يمكنني العزف على آلة موسيقية." قالت المعلمة "مجدي، هذه فرصة لك أن تفعل شيئًا تستمتع به، للتعبير عن نفسك. هل يمكنك التفكير في شيء ما؟"

"I know! I could be the photographer! I can be at the side of the stage while the class are performing. Then I can edit the photos for our school website," said Magdy. Miss Salwa smiled and said, "Well done, Magdy. "That's a great idea!"

قال مجدي "أنا أعرف! يمكن أن أكون المصور! يمكنني أن أكون في جانب المسرح أثناء أداء الفصل. ثم يمكنني تحرير الصور لموقع مدرستنا" ، . ابتسمت الأستاذة سلوى وقالت: "أحسنت يا مجدي. هذه فكرة رائعة!"

The class practiced their instruments and learned their lines. On the evening of the show, they were happy and ready to perform. When each person was on stage, Magdy took photos. Magdy's photos were on the school website the next week. "You're going to be a great photographer, Magdy," said his dad.

تدرب الفصل على الآلات الموسيقية وحفظوا كلمات أدوارهم في التمثيل. في مساء يوم العرض ، كانوا سعداء ومستعدين للعرض. عندما كان الجميع على خشبة المسرح، التقط مجدي صورًا. كانت صور مجدي على موقع المدرسة في الأسبوع التالي. قال والده: "ستكون مصورا رائعا يا مجدي".

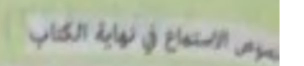




Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The school show was .... two weeks
   a) before   b) after   c) by   d) at
2. .... is going to make costumes.
   a) Magdy   b) Waleed   c) Dalia   d) Nesma
3. The .... is going to sing beautiful songs.
   a) teacher   b) choir   c) musician   d) student
4. Samir has written a funny ....
   a) story   b) song   c) play   d) book

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did Magdy walk past on the way home? ....
2. What instrument was the man playing on stage? ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. To .... is to change photos to make them better.
   a) play   b) edit   c) cut   d) advertise
2. We go to the theater to watch a ....
   a) movie   b) cartoon   c) play   d) match
3. A .... is a group of people who sing together.
   a) musician   b) choir   c) team   d) staff
4. Magdy was .... about the show. He doesn't like being on stage.
   a) happy   b) excited   c) worried   d) sad
5. I like taking photos. I'd like to be a ....
   a) doctor   b) singer   c) artist   d) photographer
6. He visited a photography .... with his mom.
   a) court   b) concert   c) show   d) exhibition
7. The class learned their .... of the play.
   a) words   b) lines   c) sentences   d) pages
8. Dalia will make .... for the choir to wear.
   a) braces   b) wheels   c) customs   d) costumes

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the following text and answer the questions.

On the way home, Magdy walked past the museum. There was an advertisement for a photography exhibition. A black and-white photo showed a man playing the piano on stage, with the audience in the shadow. "That's amazing," thought Magdy. It felt like he was there, listening to the music. At home, Magdy started looking in cupboards. "What are you doing?" asked Mom. "Dad has a good camera, doesn't he? Do you know where it is?" asked Magdy. "Yes," said Mom, taking a box from a shelf. "He hasn't used it for a long time. Are you studying photography at school?" "No, but I'll learn!" Magdy said. Magdy found his dad's photography books. He read about the different buttons on the camera. Then he learned how to **edit** the photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker. Magdy was excited.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Magdy saw an .... for a photograph exhibition.
   a) movie b) choir c) advertisement d) photo
2. The underlined word "**edit**" means to .... a photo to make it better.
   a) change b) paint c) color d) draw

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did the photo show?

....

4. How did he learn about photography?

....

5 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Photography

Guiding words:

(camera - edit - books - exhibition - photographer)

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

Creative activities

There are so many different ideas for creative activities. Here are some ideas. Junk modeling; if you have a cardboard box, plastic bottles and lids, you can use your creative and design skills to build a rocket, a ship, a car or a house. Another idea is pottery. You can use clay to make a bowl, a cup, or a vase. Another example is computer animation. If you prefer using technology, you could use your computer skills to make an animation.

Tall Tree and the Eye

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres. Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating!

My pottery project

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy. When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong. Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

Review on Unit (1)

Creative activities

junk modeling	صناعة مجسمات	making jewelery	صناعة المجوهرات
outdoor art	الفن الخارجي	pottery	صناعة الأواني الفخارية
computer animation	رسوم متحركة بالكمبيوتر	sculpture	فن النحت
clay	طين - صلصال	designing clothes	تصميم الملابس
making collage	فن تصميم الملصقات		

Music

award	جائزة	cello	آلة التشيلو
choir	كورال / مجموعة مغنيين	musician	موسيقار
stage	خشبة المسرح	talented	موهوب

Art

apron	مريلة	advertisement	إعلان
kiln	فرن	lump	كتلة صغيرة
materials	مواد خام	photography	تصوير فوتوغرافي
bubbles	فقاعات	costumes	أزياء
edit	يحرر (صورة)	irregular	غير منتظم

Language

(If) Zero Conditional

If / When + present simple , present simple or can

e.g. If you paint, you get paint on your hands.

If / When + present simple , imperative "جملة أمر"

e.g. If it starts to rain, use an umbrella.

Prepositional Phrases

عبارة حرف الجر هي مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بحرف جر، وتنتهي باسم ، أو ضمير يشير إليه حرف الجر ، و أحيانًا تنتهي بصفة.

e.g. I'm always a bit nervous when I'm **on stage**.

I try to breathe slowly **before a concert** to help me relax.

At your last concert, you looked very confident.

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

صناعة المجوهرات	....	صناعة مجسمات	....
صناعة الأواني الفخارية	....	الفن الخارجي	....
فن النحت	....	رسوم متحركة بالكمبيوتر	....

Lesson (2)

مريح	....	غير مريح	....
مسابقة	....	يختفي	....
جيد في	....	يخلط	....

Lesson (3)

خرز	....	قصيدة	....
وميض من الضوء	....	صوت	....
يصبح	....	غابة	....

Lesson (4)

فقاعات	....	نحات	....
يعكس	....	فولاذ مقاوم للصدأ	....
يطفو	....	ساطع / لامع	....

Lesson (5)

حفل موسيقي	....	موسيقار	....
يتحدث	....	مسرح	....
موهوب	....	خشبة المسرح	....

Lesson (6)

عجلة الفخار	....	صناعة الفخار	....
فقاعات	....	كتلة صغيرة	....
فرن	....	سلطانية	....

Lesson (7)

كورال - مجموعة مغنيين	....	أزياء	....
الجمهور	....	معرض	....
إعلان	....	التصوير الفوتوغرافي	....

Help your child dictate these words.

Activities on Unit (1)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can .... your own clothes.
   a) buy b) design c) paint d) recycle
2. To save money and help the planet, use .... cloth.
   a) new b) modern c) recycled d) made
3. You can make an .... on a computer.
   a) movie b) animation c) actor d) play
4. Moving pictures can tell a great ....
   a) story b) match c) tale d) film

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What project did your class work on?

....

2. What did you wear?

....

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

What - competition - When - painting - creative

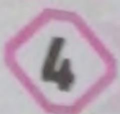
Noha : Have you heard about this 1)......................., Hesham? It's for any kind of creative project. I'd like to enter.

Hesham : Oh wow, that looks good. 2)..................... are you going to make?

Noha : I don't know. My favorite activity is 3)...................... I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

Hesham : Hmm. If I paint, I don't feel happy. I'm not very good at it!

Noha : Yes, you are! Anyway, no one is bad at a 4)...................... project. You can do or make anything you like. There's no right or wrong!



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world. Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Anish Kapoor was born in ....
   a) Egypt b) USA c) India d) China
2. Tall Tree and the Eye is in ....
   a) Spain b) London c) Paris d) France

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is Anish's job?

....

4. Find a very hard material in the text.

....



5 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly. ( )
2. Mayar's teacher, Mrs Azza, didn't come to talk to Grandma. ( )
3. Mayar has a new book. ( )
4. The children stayed at Uncle's house. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. "Your mom is ...., so I'm here today," she smiled.
2. "Are we going to your house today, ...?" asked Mayar.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you .... blue and yellow, you can get green.
   a) mix b) mixed c) mixes d) will mix
2. I go to the park .... a sunny day.
   a) at b) in c) on d) by
3. .... the bowl was dry, Amal painted it.
   a) When b) What c) Before d) While
4. If I'm sad, I ....
   a) painted b) is painting c) paint d) am painting

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. like - messy - getting - Do - you - your hands - ?

....

2. a person - A musician - who - is - music - plays - .

....

8 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Making a collage

Guiding words:

(creative - project - a bit - material - paint - paper - picture - beautiful)

....

....

....

....

Unit 2

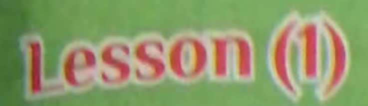
Home is where the heart is

Relaxing at home

In this unit, the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

- understand and use words for free-time activities.
  يفهم الكلمات ويستخدمها في أنشطة وقت الفراغ
- understand and use the first conditional. يفهم ويستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى
- listen and understand people explaining their opinions.
  يستمع ويفهم الناس وهم يشرحون آرائهم
- read and understand a science-fiction story.
  يقرأ ويفهم قصة خيال علمي
- understand and use phrasal verbs. يفهم ويستخدم الأفعال المركبة بحروف الجر
- write an instructional guide. يكتب دليل تعليمات
- use definitions to explain new words. يستخدم التعريفات لشرح الكلمات الجديدة
- read and understand a mystery story. يقرأ ويفهم قصة غامضة



MY NEW ROOM

Key vocabulary
مفردات رئيسية


do push-ups
يقوم بعمل تمارين الضغط


swap comic books
يتبادل الكتب المصورة


play chess
يلعب شطرنج


watch cartoons
يشاهد أفلام الكرتون


play the violin
يعزف على الكمان

Extra vocabulary
مفردات إضافية

bedroom	حجرة النوم	hobby	هواية
living room	حجرة المعيشة	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية
fantastic	رائع	online	على الإنترنت
light	مضيء	quite	تماماً / إلى حد ما
comfortable	مريح	luckily	لحسن الحظ
building game	لعبة البناء	size	حجم / مقاس
board games	ألعاب لوحية	especially	وخاصةً
sporty	رياضي	space	مساحة فارغة
awesome = amazing	مذهل / مدهش	stick	عصا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
move	ينتقل	moved	moved
share	يشارك	shared	shared
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched
swap	يتبادل	swapped	swapped
chat	يدردش	chatted	chatted

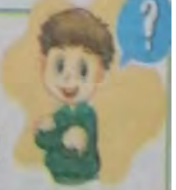
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
read	يقرأ	read	read
learn	يتعلم	learnt	learnt
have	يملك	had	had
come	يأتي	came	come
win	يفوز - يكسب	won	won

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

move into	ينتقل إلى	difficult for	صعب لـ
share with	يتشارك مع	do homework	يؤدي الواجب المنزلي
talk about	يتحدث عن	play computer games	يلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر
at the moment	في الوقت الحالي	get bored	يصيبه الملل
in the evening	في المساء		

Did you know ?



Egyptian families are getting smaller! Today, an average family has three or four people in one family home. In 2000, it was seven!

يقل عدد أفراد الأسر المصرية! اليوم، تضم الأسرة المتوسطة ثلاثة أو أربعة أشخاص في منزل عائلي واحد. في عام ٢٠٠٠، كان العدد سبعة!

One of the first cartoons was made in the early 1900s in France. It features a simple stick person moving!

تم إنتاج أحد أول أفلام الكارتون في أوائل القرن العشرين في فرنسا. ويُظهر شخص على شكل عصا بسيطة تتحرك!

 Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom!

انتقلنا إلى شقة جديدة منذ شهر، وأنا سعيد جدًا لأن لدي غرفة نوم جديدة!

I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends.

أنا أحب غرفتي الجديدة. إنها مضيئة و مريحة جدًا. أشاركها مع أخي ماجد، ونحن أصدقاء جيدين.

We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV!

لدينا مكتب طويل لأجهزة الكمبيوتر حتى نتمكن من أداء واجباتنا المدرسية في غرفة نومنا. هذا أفضل بكثير من القيام بذلك في غرفة المعيشة! هناك الكثير من الضوضاء الصادرة عن أختنا الصغيرة والتلفاز!

When we finish our homework, we can play computer games with our friends – that's a lot of fun! My favorite game is a building game. We watch cartoons with our friends, too.

عندما ننتهي من واجباتنا المنزلية، يمكننا أن نلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر مع أصدقائنا - وهذا أمر ممتع للغاية! لعبتي المفضلة هي لعبة البناء. نحن نشاهد أفلام الكرتون مع أصدقائنا أيضًا.

I also love **swapping comic books**, and like reading them in bed. My friends and I swap them once a week and talk about them.

أنا أيضًا أحب تبادل الكتب المصورة وأحب قراءتها في السرير. أنا وأصدقائي نتبادلهم مرة واحدة في الأسبوع ونتحدث عنهم.

I'm learning to play the **violin** at the moment, and I practice a lot. I'm not very good yet, so sometimes my brother gets bored with my music, especially when he's tired! He's very **sporty** and plays a lot of volleyball, so he **does push-ups** in our room – he often does 30 in the evening!

أنا أتعلم العزف على الكمان في الوقت الحالي، وأتدرب كثيرًا. أنا لست جيدًا جدًا بعد، لذلك أحيانًا يشعر أخي بالملل من الموسيقى خاصتي، خاصة عندما يكون متعبًا! إنه رياضي للغاية ويلعب الكرة الطائرة كثيرًا، لذا فهو يقوم بتمارين الضغط في غرفتنا - وغالبًا يقوم بـ ٣٠ مرة من التمرين في المساء!

Maged and I have many of the same friends. They're all awesome. Before we moved, we only chatted to them online, but it's better now that we have a bigger bedroom.

ماجد وأنا لدينا العديد من نفس الأصدقاء. انهم جميعًا رائعون. قبل أن ننتقل ، كنا ندردش معهم على الإنترنت فقط ، ولكن من الأفضل الآن أن لدينا غرفة نوم أكبر.

They come to our house to talk in our room. One of our friends, Sherif, is an amazing **chess** player. We both play chess at the school chess club. Chess is quite difficult for me, but, luckily, Sherif is helping me.

يأتون إلى منزلنا للتحدث في غرفتنا. أحد أصدقائنا ، شريف ، هو لاعب شطرنج رائع. كلانا يلعب الشطرنج في نادي الشطرنج المدرسي. الشطرنج صعب إلى حدٍ ما بالنسبة لي ، لكن لحسن الحظ ، يساعدني شريف.

Maged and I like board games. We play them with our friends in our bedroom and with our family in the living room!

ماجد وأنا نحب الألعاب اللوحية. نلعبهم مع أصدقائنا في غرفة نومنا ومع أسرتنا في غرفة المعيشة!

Mom and Dad's bedroom is next to ours. Their bedroom is the same size as ours, but they have their own bathroom. I prefer our bedroom – my favorite thing about it is that we have space for our hobbies and for our friends!

غرفة نوم أمي وأبي بجوار غرفتنا. غرفة نومهم هي نفس حجم غرفة نومنا، ولكن لديهم حمام خاص بهم. أنا أفضل غرفة نومنا - الشيء المفضل لدي هو أن لدينا مساحة لهواياتنا ولأصدقائنا!

A) Match the phrases to the pictures.

1. do push-ups ( )
2. swap comic books ( )
3. play chess ( )
4. watch cartoons ( )
5. play the violin ( )

a. b. c. d. e.

B) Read again and write Seleem, Maged, or Both.

1. .... like(s) board games.
2. .... play(s) the violin.
3. .... play(s) volleyball.
4. .... love(s) comic books.
5. .... watch(es) cartoons.
6. .... do(es) push-ups.

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We moved into a new .... a month ago.
   a) villa b) beach c) apartment d) cottage
2. I'm so .... because I have a new bedroom.
   a) sad b) angry c) happy d) miserable
3. I .... my new room.
   a) love b) hate c) dislike d) don't like
4. Maged and I are .... friends.
   a) bad b) terrible c) sad d) good

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where is Mom and Dad's bedroom? ....
2. Is Mom and Dad's bedroom the same size as yours? ....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

does - makes - violin - sporty - bored

I'm learning to play the 1) .... at the moment, and I practice a lot. I'm not very good yet, so sometimes my brother gets 2) .... with my music, especially when he's tired! He's very 3)................... and plays a lot of volleyball so he 4)...................... push-ups in our room-he often does 30 in the evening.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I usually .... cartoons on TV. They're funny!
   a) play b) listen c) watch d) do
2. I often .... comic books with my friends.
   a) swap b) play c) listen d) do
3. I play the .... because my mom says it's good to learn a musical instrument.
   a) books b) push-ups c) cartoons d) violin
4. I do .... in my room because I want to get stronger!
   a) chess b) cartoons c) homework d) push-ups

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. I play .... with my friend Sherif. He's very good and always wins!
   a) cartoons b) push-ups c) comic books d) chess
6. I .... a room with my brother.
   a) share b) give c) do d) watch
7. I .... homework in my bedroom.
   a) make b) do c) give d) play
8. I have my dinner .... the evening.
   a) at b) on c) with d) in
9. My friends are .... They are amazing.
   a) awesome b) bad c) terrible d) horrible

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom! I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends. We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV! When we finish our homework, we can play computer games with our friends – that's a lot of fun! My favorite game is a building game. We watch cartoons with our friends, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The main idea of the text is ....
   a) a new apartment b) an old house
   c) a new village d) a new city
2. They watch .... with their friends.
   a) comedies b) cartoons c) science fiction d) horror films

B) Answer the following questions.

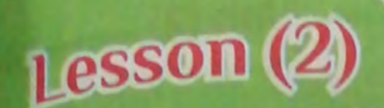
3. When did they move into a new apartment? ....
4. Where do they do their homework? ....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. books - I - comic - swap - friends - my - with - .
....
2. do - in - What - bedroom - do - you - your - ?
....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

مفردات رئيسية



games console
وحدة ألعاب إلكترونية




hairdryer
مجفف الشعر



refrigerator
ثلاجة



toaster
محمصة خبز



laptop
كمبيوتر محمول

Extra vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

blender	خلاط	sharp	حاد
milkshake	حليب مخفوق	medicine	دواء
blade	شفرة - نصل	scientist	عالم
motor	موتور - محرك	sick	مريض
invention	اختراع	metal	معدن
vaccine	لقاح - مصل	smoothie	عصير - سموثي
useful	مفيد	strawberries	فراولة
soup	حساء - شوربة	glass	زجاج

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
heat	يسخن	heated	heated
change	يغير - يتغير	changed	changed
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
chop	يقطع	chopped	chopped
add	يضيف	added	added
blend	يخلط - يمزج	blended	blended

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	thought
know	يعرف	knew	known
make	يصنع	made	made
put	يضع	put	put

Definitions تعريفات

milkshake	a drink that is often chocolate or vanilla	حليب مخفوق بالنكهات
motor	a part of a machine that makes something move	موتور - محرك
invention	something that someone has made for the first time	اختراع
smoothie	a drink made of blended fruits or sometimes vegetables	شراب من الفاكهة والحليب
appliance	an object that is useful	جهاز منزلي
vaccine	a type of medicine that stops you getting ill	لقاح - مصل

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

over the years	على مر السنين	different from	مختلف عن
at home	في البيت	chop the food	يقطع الطعام

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

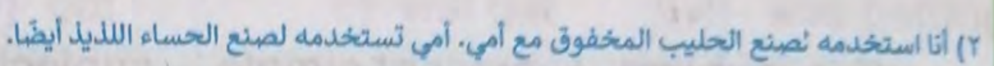
Amazing appliances أجهزة منزلية مدهشة

Karim

1) I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie with fruit and ice!

١) أعتقد أن الخلاط هو أفضل جهاز مطبخ! إذا كان الجو حارًا غدًا ، فسوف أصنع عصيرًا بالفواكه والثلج!

2) I use it for making **milkshakes** with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too.


٢) أنا استخدمه لصنع الحليب المخفوق مع أمي. أمي تستخدمه لصنع الحساء اللذيذ أيضًا.

3) Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the **blade** turns, it chops the food. He added a small **motor**. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new **invention** to make milkshakes.

٣) هل تعلم أن رجلًا أمريكي من أصل بولندي يدعي ستيفن بوبلاوسكي اخترع الخلاط في ١٩٢٢؟ وضع شفرة حادة في قاع كوب طويل. عندما تدور الشفرة ، فإنه يقطع الطعام. وأضاف محرك صغير. أدار المحرك الشفرة التي مزجت الطعام معًا. استخدم اختراعه الجديد لصنع الحليب المخفوق.


blender

4) Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a **vaccine**. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.

٤) الخلاطات مفيدة أيضًا في الطب. على سبيل المثال ، كان الدكتور جوناس سالك عالمًا مشهورًا. في عام ١٩٥٣ ، استخدم الخلاط لصنع لقاح. لقد أنقذ لقاحه ملايين الأرواح. لن يمرض الناس إذا كان لديهم لقاح.

5) Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can **heat** food, too!

٥) في الوقت الحاضر ، يختلف الخلاط قليلًا عن خلاط العشرينيات من القرن الماضي. هناك خلاطات مصنوعة من البلاستيك والزجاج والمعدن. يمكن لبعض الخلاطات تسخين الطعام أيضًا!

Do you have a blender at home? Do you use your blender a lot, or a little? What would you do without your blender in the kitchen?

هل لديك خلاط في المنزل؟ هل تستخدم الخلاط كثيرًا ، أو قليلًا؟ ماذا ستفعل بدون الخلاط في المطبخ؟



(If) First Conditional

"إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Usage الاستخدام

1) **We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.**

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf). ...

e.g. If it is hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie.

Subject + (will + inf.) + if + subject + present simple

e.g. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.

2) **We use can to express ability.**

نستخدم (مصدر + can) للتعبير عن القدرة.

If + subject + present simple , subject + can + inf.

e.g. If you arrive early, you can get a good seat.

3) **We use may when we aren't sure.**

نستخدم (مصدر + may) عندما لا نكون متأكدين من شيء.

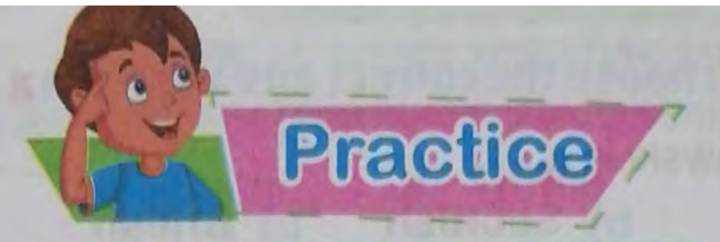
e.g. If she hurries, she may catch the train; I'm not sure.

Note:

When the "if" clause is second, we don't use a comma.

عندما تكون جملة الشرط هي الثانية لا نستخدم فاصلة بين الجملتين.

e.g. Dad can take you to school if you ask him now.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If my hair .... wet, I'll use a hairdryer.
   a) gets b) got c) will get d) was getting
2. If I put food in the refrigerator, it .... cold.
   a) is b) was c) had d) will be
3. We'll play with games console if my friends .... to my house.
   a) come b) comes c) came d) was coming
4. If I .... bread in the toaster, the bread will be hot.
   a) put b) to put c) puts d) had put
5. She .... use a laptop to do her homework. I'm not sure.
   a) may b) will c) would d) can
6. If you need help, you .... ask me.
   a) could b) can c) might d) would

2 Correct the underlined word.

1. If I **had** milk and strawberries, I'll make a smoothie. (......................)
2. I **would** make a smoothie if it is hot tomorrow. (......................)
3. If I **wants** to play games, I'll use a games console. (......................)
4. If I want to make soup, I **would** use a blender. (......................)

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Stephen Poplawski is a .... -American man.
   a) Polish   b) Scottish   c) British   d) German
2. Stephen Poplawski invented the .... in 1922.
   a) blender   b) toaster   c) laptop   d) speakers
3. He put a .... blade in the bottom of a tall glass.
   a) small   b) narrow   c) sharp   d) short
4. He used his new invention to make ....
   a) milkshakes   b) tea   c) coffee   d) ice

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What was Dr. Jonas Salk? ....
2. What did Dr. Jonas use a blender for? ....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

delicious - appliance - tool - blender - smoothie

I think the 1).................... is the best kitchen 2).................... ! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a 3).................... with fruit and ice! I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make 4).................... soups, too.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If it is hot tomorrow, I .... a smoothie.
   a) make   b) will make   c) would make   d) makes
2. A/An .... is a type of medicine that stops you getting ill.
   a) motor   b) invention   c) appliance   d) vaccine
3. If you .... early, you can get a good seat.
   a) arrives   b) arrived   c) arrive   d) arriving
4. A .... is a part of a machine that makes something move.
   a) motor   b) vaccine   c) milkshake   d) stone

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. People won't get sick if they .... a vaccine.

a) **had** b) **have** c) **were having** d) **has**

6. A .... is a drink made of blended fruits or sometimes vegetables.

a) **vaccine** b) **toaster** c) **laptop** d) **smoothie**

7. If it is hot tomorrow, I .... swimming.

a) **go** b) **will go** c) **went** d) **going**

8. A/An .... is something that someone has made for the first time.

a) **milkshake** b) **invention** c) **vaccine** d) **appliance**

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine. Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat food, too! Do you have a blender at home? Do you use your blender a lot, or a little? What would you do without your blender in the kitchen?

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is ....

a) **blenders** b) **medicines** c) **washing machines** d) **coffee machines**

2. Nowadays the blender is a little .... from the 1920s.

a) **same** b) **similar** c) **different** d) **like**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How has the vaccine helped people? ....

4. What are blenders made of?? ....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. heat - can - Some - food - blenders - .

....

2. for - What - your - use - do - you - blenders - ?

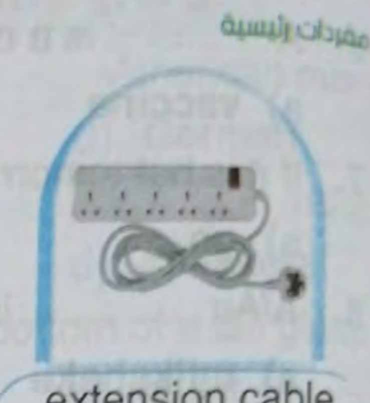
....

Lesson (3) EXPLAINING YOUR OPINION

Key vocabulary
مفردات رئيسية


power socket
مقبس الكهرباء


interactive whiteboard
سبورة تفاعلية


extension cable
سلك / كابل تمديد

Extra vocabulary
مفردات إضافية

electricity	كهرباء	free time	وقت فراغ
information	معلومات	lighting	إضاءة
power outage	انقطاع الكهرباء	the dark	الظلام
strange	غريب	electric kettle	غلاية كهربائية
actually	حقًا - فعلًا	transportation	مواصلات
idea	فكرة	bus station	محطة أتوبيس
interesting	ممتع - شيق	airport	مطار
discussion	مناقشة	travelling	السفر
useful	مفيد	activities	أنشطة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	disappeared
try	يحاول	tried	tried
plan	يخطط	planned	planned
guess	يخمن	guessed	guessed
happen	يحدث	happened	happened

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
get	يحصل على	got	got
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
let	يسمح - يدع	let	let
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
say	يقول	said	said
mean	يعني - يقصد	meant	meant

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

sit in a circle	يجلس في دائرة	agree with	يتفق مع
talk about	يتكلم عن	in my opinion	في رأيي

Language Functions

Expressing opinions التعبير عن الرأي

In my opinion,...	في رأيي،...	I think...	أعتقد
I believe ...	أعتقد		

Agreeing with opinions الاتفاق في الرأي

I agree with you.	أتفق معك.	I think so.	أعتقد ذلك.

Disagreeing with opinion عدم الاتفاق في الرأي

I don't agree with you.	لا أتفق معك	I don't think so.	لا أعتقد ذلك.

Example

A: In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time.

B: I don't agree. I think electricity is most important for lighting.

Help your child express his opinion.

ساعد طفلك أن يعبر عن رأيه.

Listen and read.

Mariam's day at school

Mom : Hi Mariam, how was your day?

مرحبًا مريم، كيف كان يومك؟

Mariam : Oh, hi Mom! It was a strange day, actually. We had a power outage! My class and I were looking at the interactive whiteboard, when suddenly all the information disappeared.

أوه، مرحبًا أمي! كان يومًا غريبًا، بالفعل. كان لدينا انقطاع في الكهرباء! كنت أنا وزملائي ننظر إلى السبورة التفاعلية، عندما اختفت جميع المعلومات فجأة.

Mom : Really? That is strange! What did Miss Amira do?

حقًا؟ هذا غريب! ماذا فعلت الأستاذة أميرة؟

Mariam : Well, first she got an extension cable and tried a different power socket, but that wasn't working either.

حسنًا، أولًا أحضرت كابل تمديد وجربت مقبس كهرباء مختلف، لكن هذا لم يعمل أيضًا.

Mom : Oh no! So, there was no electricity! What happened?

أوه لا! إذن، لم يكن هناك كهرباء! ماذا حدث؟

Mariam : We couldn't do the lesson Miss Amira planned. So she asked us all to sit in a circle and talk about why electricity is important in our lives.

لم نتمكن من القيام بالدرس الذي خططت له الأستاذة أميرة. لذلك طلبت منا جميعًا الجلوس في دائرة والتحدث عن سبب أهمية الكهرباء في حياتنا.

Mom : Let me guess – everyone thought it was important for computer games!

دعيني أخمن - أعتقد الجميع أنها مهمة لألعاب الكمبيوتر!

Mariam : Ha ha! Actually, no. We all had lots of different ideas. It was a really interesting discussion.

ها ها! في الواقع، لا. كان لدينا جميعًا الكثير من الأفكار المختلفة. لقد كانت مناقشة مثيرة للاهتمام حقًا.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Children's opinions about electricity

آراء الأطفال عن الكهرباء

In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop! I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too.

في رأيي، الكهرباء هي الأكثر فائدة في أوقات فراغنا. أنا أحب جهاز اللاب توب الخاص بي! أقوم بواجباتي المنزلية عليه، ثم ألعب ألعاب الفيديو مع أخي. أحب مشاهدة التلفاز مع جدتي في المساء أيضًا.

Doha



Khaled



I know what you mean, but I think electricity is most important for lighting. I don't like the dark, and we need lights in the evening.

أعرف ما تقصدينه، لكني أعتقد أن الكهرباء هي الأكثر أهمية للإضاءة. أنا لا أحب الظلام، ونحتاج إلى الأضواء في المساء.

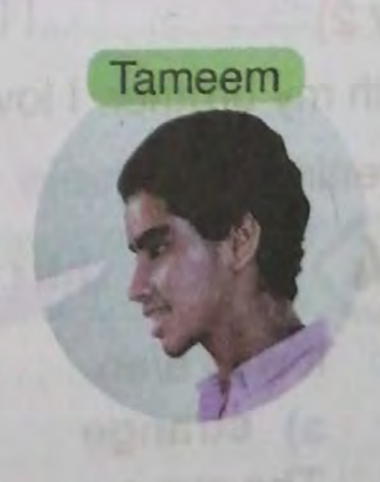
Salma



I don't agree. I think it's more important in the kitchen. We can't use our electric kettle without electricity, or our blender – or our refrigerator!

أنا لا أوافق. أعتقد أنها أكثر أهمية في المطبخ. فلا يمكن استخدام غلايتنا الكهربائية بدون كهرباء ، أو خلاطنا – أو ثلاجتنا!

Tameem



What about transportation? Some people have electric cars. And bus stations and airports all need electricity, too.

وماذا عن المواصلات؟ بعض الناس لديهم سيارات كهربائية. ومحطات الحافلات والمطارات كلها بحاجة إلى الكهرباء أيضًا.

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It was a .... day
   a) happy b) normal c) easy d) strange
2. They had a .... outage
   a) power b) music c) video d) audio
3. They were looking at the .... whiteboard
   a) black b) interactive c) lazy d) normal
4. Suddenly all the information ....
   a) appeared b) arrived c) disappeared d) cleared

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where is electricity most important?

....

2. When do we need lights?

....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

games - laptop - think - onion - watch

In my 1) ...., electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my 2) ....! I do my homework on it, then I play video 3) .... with my brother. I love to 4) .... television with my grandma in the evening, too.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It was a/an .... day. We had a power outage.
   a) strange b) happy c) easy d) interesting
2. The class were looking at the .... whiteboard.
   a) interact b) act c) interactive d) lazy

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. When they had a power .... , all the information disappeared.
   a) coming   b) outage   c) age   d) putting
4. She got an extension cable and tried a different power ....
   a) pocket   b) bucket   c) socket   d) socks
5. .... my opinion, electricity is most important in the kitchen.
   a) In   b) At   c) On   d) Up
6. Some people have .... cars.
   a) power   b) electric   c) light   d) electricity

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. what - mean - I - know - you - .

....

2. is - important - Why - electricity - ?

....

3. was - day - your - How - ?

....

4. the - looking - whiteboard - They - at - interactive - were - .

....

6 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Why is electricity important?

Guiding words:

(opinion - electricity - free time - laptop - kitchen - electric kettle)

....

....

....

....

Lesson (4) STORY: THE DAY THE BILLS BROKE DOWN

Key vocabulary فردات رئيسية

terrible	فظيع - سيء جدًا	iron	كوي
break down	يتعطل	shocked	مصدوم
program	يبرمج	battery	طارية

Adverbs

slowly	ببطء	quickly	سرعة
suddenly	فجأة	luckily	حسن الحظ
quietly	بهدوء	sadly	أسف - بحزن
noisily	بإزعاج	lazily	كسل
normally	بصورة طبيعية	busily	نهماك

Extra vocabulary فردات إضافية

life	حياة	understand	فهم
earth	الأرض	complicated	عقد
humans	البشر - الإنسان	engineer	هندس
chores	أعمال منزلية	solve	حل
pants	بنطلون	fill	ملأ
awful	فظيع - سيء جدًا	microwave	يكروويف
uniform	زي موحد	ready	اهز - مستعد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
work	يعمل	worked	worked
start	يبدأ	started	started
fix	يصلح	fixed	fixed
cry	يبكي	cried	cried

Help your child identify these words.
اعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (4)

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
fall	يقع - يسقط	fell	fallen
wake	يوقظ	woke	woken
find	يجد	found	found

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

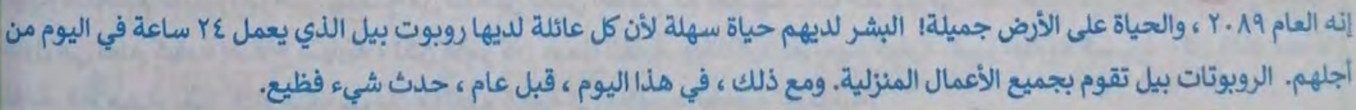
all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	go out	ينطفئ
lie on	يستلقي على	wake... up	يوقظ
wait for	ينتظر لـ	look worried	يبدوا قلقًا
do chores	يقوم بأعمال منزلية	find out	يكتشف
do well	يؤدي جيدًا	tried to learn how	حاول أن يتعلم كيفية

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

THE DAY THE BILLS BROKE DOWN!

في اليوم الذي تعطلت فيه الروبوتات بيل!

It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their chores. However, on this day, a year ago, something **terrible** happened.



إنه العام ٢٠٨٩ ، والحياة على الأرض جميلة! البشر لديهم حياة سهلة لأن كل عائلة لديها روبوت بيل الذي يعمل ٢٤ ساعة في اليوم من أجلهم. الروبوتات بيل تقوم بجميع الأعمال المنزلية. ومع ذلك ، في هذا اليوم ، قبل عام ، حدث شيء فظيع.

The day started normally. In Australia, some Bills were **ironing** clothes for their humans to wear to work. In Italy, other Bills were quietly making milkshakes, and others were fixing cars. In Egypt, the Bills were making koshari for the next day's lunch. But then, all over the world, the noise of the robots suddenly stopped.

بدأ اليوم بشكل طبيعي. في أستراليا ، كانت بعض الروبوتات بيل تقوم بكي الملابس ليرتديها البشر للعمل. في إيطاليا ، كانت الروبوتات بيل أخرى تصنع الحليب المخفوق بهدوء ، وكان آخرون يصلحون السيارات. في مصر ، كانت الروبوتات بيل تعمل الكشري لغذاء اليوم التالي. ولكن عندئذ، في جميع أنحاء العالم ، توقف ضجيج الروبوتات فجأة.

All the Bills suddenly **broke down**. They fell to the ground, and their lights went out.

تعطلت جميع الروبوتات بيل فجأة. سقطوا على الأرض ، وانطفأت أنوارهم.

One family in Alexandria was shocked when they saw their Bill lying on the kitchen floor. They tried to wake him up. "Bill!" said Mom, "What happened? We're waiting for our koshari!" Bill said nothing. Hesham, the young son, started crying, "I need a clean uniform tomorrow," he said, "And who is going to iron my school pants?" "This is awful! I programmed Bill to fix my car and change the battery in it. What am I going to do?" Dad said.

صُدمت عائلة في الإسكندرية عندما رأوا بيل ملقى على أرضية المطبخ. حاولوا إيقاظه. قالت أمي "بيل!، ماذا حدث؟ نحن في انتظار وجبة الكشري!" "بيل لم يقل شيئًا. بدأ هشام، الابن الصغير، يبكي،" أحتاج إلى زي نظيف غدًا، ومن سيكوي بنطلون المدرسة؟" قال أبي "هذا أمر فظيع!"! لقد برمجت بيل لإصلاح سيارتي وتغيير البطارية فيها. ماذا سأفعل؟".

Everyone looked very worried, but the daughter, Fareeda, said, "We'll just do some chores ourselves, like people did in the past. We'll go on the internet and find out how to do things. That's what Granddad told me people used to do."

بدا الجميع قلقين للغاية ، لكن الابنة فريدة قالت: "سنقوم ببعض الأعمال المنزلية بأنفسنا ، كما كان الناس يفعلون في الماضي. سندخل على شبكة الإنترنت ونعرف كيفية القيام بالأشياء. هذا ما أخبرني به لي الجد عما اعتاد الناس على فعله."

The family started trying to learn things from videos. They learned how to use a blender and had milkshakes. Mom learned how to use the microwave so they could heat some food. They didn't really like that because Bill normally made the meals for the family. Dad tried to learn how to fix his car, but it was too difficult. And he certainly didn't understand how to change the car battery – that was very complicated. Hesham did well! He quickly learned how to iron his own clothes for school!

بدأت العائلة في محاولة تعلم الأشياء من مقاطع الفيديو. لقد تعلموا كيفية استخدام الخلاط وتناولوا الحليب المخفوق. تعلمت أمي كيفية استخدام الميكرويف حتى يتمكنوا من تسخين بعض الطعام. لم يعجبهم ذلك حقًا لأن بيل عادة ما يصنع وجبات الطعام للعائلة. حاول أبي تعلم كيفية إصلاح سيارته ، لكن الأمر كان صعبًا للغاية. وبالتأكيد لم يفهم كيفية تغيير بطارية السيارة – كان ذلك معقدًا للغاية. قام هشام بعمل أداء جيد! سرعان ما تعلم كيفية كي ملابسه الخاصة للمدرسة!

Luckily, a computer engineer solved the problem the next day, and all the Bills started working again. The Bills in Egypt were busily cleaning cars, ready for work on Sunday. Life was normal again. However, the humans are now ready – in case the Bills break down again one day…

لحسن الحظ ، حل مهندس كمبيوتر المشكلة في اليوم التالي ، وبدأت جميع الروبوتات بيل العمل مرة أخرى. كانت الروبوتات بيل في مصر مشغولة بتنظيف السيارات ، جاهزة للعمل يوم الأحد. كانت الحياة طبيعية مرة أخرى. ومع ذلك ، فإن البشر جاهزون الآن - في حالة تعطل الروبوتات بيل مرة أخرى يومًا ما ...

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

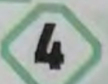
1. It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is ....
   a) salty b) hard c) sweet d) spicy
2. Every family has a Bill ....
   a) robot b) motor c) ring d) door
3. The Bill robot works 24 hours a ....
   a) week b) month c) year d) day
4. The Bill robots do all family's ....
   a) exercises b) chores c) clothes d) milkshake

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where was Bill lying? ....
2. What did Hesham need? ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The word " .... " means very bad.
   a) wonderful b) terrible c) fantastic d) interesting
2. Bills were .... clothes for people to wear.
   a) ironing b) cooking c) watching d) eating
3. Bill robots were .... cars.
   a) cooking b) ironing c) eating d) fixing
4. The family was .... when their Bill broke down.
   a) happy b) pleased c) shocked d) glad
5. Bills can .... the car with gas.
   a) fail b) fill c) feel d) fall
6. ...., a computer engineer fixed the problem.
   a) Sadly b) Angrily c) Luckily d) Unluckily
7. ...., all the robots broke down.
   a) Suddenly b) Lazily c) Luckily d) Happily



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their chores. However, on this day, a year ago, something terrible happened. The day started normally. In Australia some Bills were ironing clothes for their humans to wear to work. In Italy other Bills were quietly making milkshakes, and others were fixing cars. In Egypt, the Bills were making koshari for the next day's lunch. But then, all over the world, the noise of the robots suddenly stopped. All the Bills suddenly broke down. They fell to the ground, and their lights went out.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The main idea of the text is ....

   a) **televisions** b) **computers** c) **the internet** d) **Bill robots**

2. In Egypt, the Bills were making ....

   a) **milkshakes** b) **koshari** c) **meat** d) **rice**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What were Bills doing in Australia? ....
4. Why do humans have easy lives? ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. lives - Humans - have - easy - .

   ....

2. ironing - were - Bills - clothes - busily - .

   ....

3. to - They - fell - ground - the - broke down - and - .

   ....

6 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Robots

Guiding words:

(iron - fix - make - heat - change - fill)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (5) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

مفردات رئيسية

Chores أعمال منزلية



put out the garbage

يُخرج القمامة



tidy up my room

أرتب حجرتي



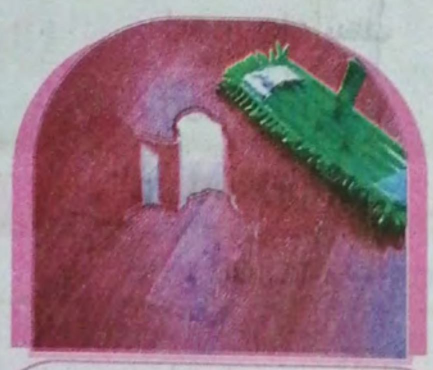
pick up the books

يلتقط الكُتب



hang up the clothes

يعلق الملابس



mop up the water

يمسح الماء



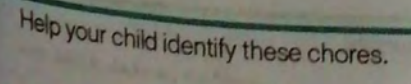
clean up the kitchen

ينظف المطبخ



put away the dishes

يضع الأطباق في مكانها



Help your child identify these chores.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على تلك الأعمال المنزلية.

Extra vocabulary مفردات إضافية

shelf	رف	full	مملوء
movie	فيلم	dirty	متسخ / قذر
floor	أرضية	toys	لعب أطفال
garbage	قمامة	messy	فوضوي - غير مرتب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
mop	يمسح	mopped	mopped
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
tidy	يرتب	tidied	tidied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

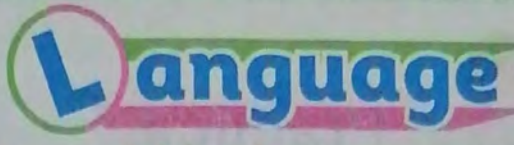
Present		Past	P.P
put	يضع	put	put
hang	يعلق	hung	hung

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the shelf	على الرف	look better	يبدو أفضل
on the floor	على الأرضية	do chores	يقوم بأعمال منزلية

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Phrasal Verbs أفعال اصطلاحية

A phrasal verb: is a verb followed by a preposition.
الفعل الاصطلاحي هو فعل متبوع بحرف جر.

verb + preposition

e.g. I always **tidy up** my room on weekends.

clean up ينظف	put out يُخرج	tidy up يرتب	mop up يمسح
put away يضع الشيء في مكانه	pick up يلتقط	hang up يعلق	

Offering help عرض المساعدة

- **Would you like me to + inf. ....?**
- **Shall I + inf. ....?**
- **I'll + inf. .....**

Accepting قبول	Refusing رفض
- Yes, please.	- No, thanks.

1) **A)** Would you like me to mop up the juice? **B)** Yes, please.
2) **A)** Shall I put away the toys? **B)** No, thanks.
3) **A)** There are books all over your bedroom floor?
B) I'll pick up the books.

Asking for help طلب المساعدة

Could you + inf. ....?

Accepting قبول	Refusing رفض
- Yes, of course.	- Sorry, I can't.

A) The kitchen is messy. Could you put out the garbage?
B) Yes, of course.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I think we need to clean .... the kitchen
   a) down b) up c) away d) off
2. Let's mop .... the water on the floor
   a) up b) out c) in d) at
3. Can you put .... the dishes
   a) off b) away c) out d) in
4. Can you pick .... the books and put them on the shelf, please?
   a) down b) over c) in d) up
5. We have to put .... the garbage tonight
   a) in b) up c) out d) off
6. If you hang .... your clothes, your bedroom will look better
   a) up b) down c) off d) in
7. She will tidy .... her room
   a) down b) on c) in d) up
8. Please, put .... the books
   a) on b) away c) over d) up

2 Correct the underlined word.

1. If you tidy <u>at</u> your room, you may watch a movie. (..................)
2. I'll hang <u>down</u> my clothes. (..................)
3. I'll put <u>on</u> my books. (..................)
4. She will tidy <u>off</u> the dinning room. (..................)

Help your child deal with such questions.

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The family are .... doing their chores.
   a) happy b) sad c) bad d) angry
2. It is early on ....
   a) Monday b) Sunday c) Tuesday d) Friday
3. Dalia is .... up the clothes.
   a) making b) putting c) hanging d) mopping
4. Dina is putting .... the garbage.
   a) in b) at c) on d) out

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is Mona doing?

....

2. Who is buying a present?

....

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

put - living room - tidy - hang - make

Ali: Your new clothes are still in the 1) ....

Omar: I'll 2) .... them up now.

Ali: There are books all over your bedroom floor.

Omar: I'll 3) .... them away.

Ali: Our dining table is really messy.

Omar: I'll 4) .... it up.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. She will put .... the garbage.
   a) in b) out c) of d) up
2. I'll .... up the kitchen floor.
   a) put b) make c) pick d) mop
3. The toys are .... the floor.
   a) under b) up c) on d) in
4. Mom is .... up the clothes.
   a) making b) hanging c) putting d) mopping
5. Would you like me to mop .... the juice?
   a) down b) on c) up d) off
6. Can you pick .... the books?
   a) up b) off c) on d) in

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. messy - Our - is - table - dining - .

....

2. mopping - the - She - is - water - up - .

....

3. is - Dina - the - cleaning - kitchen - up - .

....

4. toys - floor - There - on - are - the - .

....

6 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Chores

Guiding words:

(mop up - hang up - clean up - put out - tidy up)

....

....

....

Lesson (6) WRITING AN INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

Key vocabulary
مفردات رئيسية

stroke	يلمس برفق	sharpen	يشحذ (يجعله حادًا)
attention	اهتمام	claws	مخالب
collar	طوق	vaccinations	تطعيمات

Extra vocabulary
مفردات إضافية

furry	ذو فرو	warm	دافئ
back	ظهر	comfortable	مريح
chin	ذقن	couch	أريكة (كنبة)
safe	آمن	scratch post	عمود خدش
heat lamp	مصباح تدفئة	wooden pole	عمود خشبي
soil	تربة زراعية	address	عنوان
hard	صلب	space	مساحة
temperature	درجة الحرارة	owner	مالك

Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

care for	يهتم بـ	bad for	ضار لـ
feel at home	يشعر كأنه في بيته	get lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق
lots of	كثير من	get sick	يمرض
wake ... up	يُوقظ	interested in	مهتم بـ
at different times	في أوقات مختلفة	look after	يعتني بـ / يرعى

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
stroke	يلمس برفق	stroked	stroked
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
sharpen	يشحذ	sharpened	sharpened

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
dig	يحفر	dug	dug
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept

Read the guide. اقرأ الدليل.

Caring for your Cat

كيف يمكنني أن أجعل قطتي تشعر وكأنها في بيتها؟

How can I make my cat feel at home?

Give your cat lots of **attention** so it feels safe. You should **stroke** it. This means that you should move your hand over its back, or under its chin – cats love this!

امنح قطتك الكثير من الاهتمام حتى تشعر بالأمان. يجب عليك أن تلمسها برفق. هذا يعني أنه يجب عليك تحريك يدك على ظهرها أو تحت ذقنها - القطط تحب هذا!

Where do cats like sleeping? **أين تحب القطط أن تنام؟**

They like a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the couch! Don't wake it up – cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day!

إنهم يحبون سريرًا دافئًا ومريحًا ، لكن في بعض الأحيان ينامون فقط على الأريكة! لا توقظها - تحتاج القطط إلى النوم لمدة ١٥ ساعة كل يوم!

What do cats eat? **ماذا تأكل القطط؟**

They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

يحبون الوجبات الصغيرة في أوقات مختلفة من اليوم. لا ينبغي أن تتناول القطط الكثير من الحليب. الحليب ضار بهم. الماء أفضل.

What equipment does a cat need? **ما هي المعدات التي تحتاجها القطة؟**

A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can **sharpen** its **claws** on. Cats also like toys to play with. A **collar** with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you.



تحتاج القطة إلى عمود خدش. هذا عمود خشبي قوي يمكن للقط أن يشحذ مخالبه عليه. تحب القطط أيضًا الألعاب للعب بها. طوق به اسم القط وعنوانه هو فكرة جيدة. إذا ضاعت قطتك ، يمكن لشخص ما إحضارها إلى المنزل لك.

Help your child read the guide.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الدليل.

How often should cats go to the vet?

كم مرة يجب أن تذهب القطط إلى الطبيب البيطري؟

Cats should go to the vet once a year for **vaccinations**. These stop them from getting sick. If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new **furry** friend in your life!

يجب أن تذهب القطط إلى الطبيب البيطري مرة واحدة في السنة للتطعيم. هذه تمنعهم من المرض. إذا كنت تعتني بقطك جيدًا ، سيكون لديك صديق جديد ذو فرو في حياتك!

- Read the guide again. Write T (True) or F (False)

1. Cats like sleeping on a cold, hard floor. (..........................)
2. Cats like eating one big meal a day. (..........................)
3. Cats should go to the vet every year. (..........................)



Tip!

Definitions explain what you mean.

التعريفات تفسر ما تعنيه؟

When we are writing, we can use "This is, or This means that" to explain words to the reader.

عندما نكتب ، يمكننا استخدام "هذا هو ، أو هذا يعني أن" لشرح الكلمات للقارئ.

- Use "**This is**" before a noun phrase, for example:

استخدم "هذا" قبل عبارة اسمية ، على سبيل المثال:

A cat needs a <u>scratch post</u>. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on.

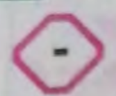
القط يحتاج إلى عمود الخدش. هذا عمود خشبي قوي يمكن للقط أن يشحذ مخالبه عليه.

Use "**This means that**" before a full sentence with a subject and a verb:

استخدم "هذا يعني أن" قبل جملة كاملة بها فاعل وفعل:

<u>Stroke it</u>. This means that you should move your hand over its back or under its chin – cats love this!

المسها برفق. هذا يعني أنه يجب عليك تحريك يدك فوق ظهرها أو تحت ذقنها-القطط تحب هذا!



Read and choose.

1. Your cat needs a vaccination. **(This means that / This is)** a treatment from the vet to stop it getting sick.
2. Cats are very furry. **(This means that / This is)** they have a lot of soft hair.
3. Cats need attention. **(This means that / This is)** they need their owners to be interested in them.
4. You should buy your cat a collar. **(This means that / This is)** a long thin piece of leather to wear around its neck.

Look and learn.

انظر وتعلم.



Caring for your turtle

How can I make my turtle feel at home?

كيف يمكنني أن أجعل سلحفاتي تشعر وكأنها في بيتها؟

Turtles need a very large space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space! They need clean soil to dig in, too.

تحتاج السلاحف إلى مساحة كبيرة جدًا لمنزلها. السلحفاة الأكبر تحتاج إلى مساحة أكبر! إنهم بحاجة إلى تربة نظيفة للحفر فيها أيضًا.

Where do turtles sleep?

أين تنام السلاحف؟

Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

تحب السلاحف النوم في مكان آمن ومظلم حيث لا تتغير درجة الحرارة.

What do turtles eat?

ماذا تأكل السلاحف؟

These animals like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food.

هذه الحيوانات تحب أكل الزهور والنباتات. يمكنك أيضًا شراء طعام خاص بالسلاحف.

What equipment do turtles need?

ما هي المعدات التي تحتاجها السلاحف؟

They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.

يحتاجون أحيانًا إلى مصباح حراري. هذا ضوء خاص للحفاظ على جمال ودفء السلحفاة .



Help your child look and learn.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويتعلم.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A cat needs a scratch ....
   a) paper b) post c) letter d) envelop
2. Cats like .... to play with.
   a) boys b) dogs c) toys d) pens
3. We write the cat's name and address on a ....
   a) book b) table c) bag d) collar
4. The cat sharpens its .... on a wooden pole.
   a) teeth b) claws c) eyes d) legs

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

vaccinations - furry - go - sick - big

Cats should 1)........................ to the vet once a year for 2)........................ . These stop them from getting 3)........................ . If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new 4)........................ friend in your life!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... lamp is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.
   a) heat b) hot c) cool d) cold
2. The cat uses its .... to protect itself.
   a) fingers b) claws c) toes d) ears
3. Cats are very furry. .... they have a lot of soft hair.
   a) This means that b) That means that
   c) This is d) That is
4. Cats need attention. ..... they need their owners to be interested in them.
   a) This is b) This means that
   c) That is d) That means that



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Turtles need a very large space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space! They need clean soil to dig in, too. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change. These animals like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food. They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Turtles like .... in a safe, dark place.
   a) eating   b) playing   c) sleeping   d) reading
2. Turtles like to eat flowers and ....
   a) burger   b) cakes   c) chocolate   d) plants

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do turtles need for their home? ....
4. Why do turtles need a heat lamp? ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. cat - vaccination - Your - a - needs - .

....

2. equipment - need - do - What - turtles - ?

....

6 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

An instructional guide for a dog

Guiding words:

(attention - stroke - warm - meat - sleep - vet)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7)

STORY: THE SPECIAL HOUSE

Vocabulary

مفردات

special	خاص - مميز	underneath	تحت
dangerous	خطير	memories	ذكريات
vacation	إجازة	childhood	طفولة
hole	ثقب - فتحة	glad	سعيد
message	رسالة	downstairs	الدور السفلي

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on school vacation	في إجازة مدرسية	at home	بالبيت
jump off	يقفز من	run through	يجري (عبر - خلال)
in a child's writing	بخط طفل	feel bored	يشعر بالملل
was built from	بُني من	grow up	يكبر
go up	يصعد	I don't believe it!	لا أصدقها!
go into	يدخل	at the end of	في نهاية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
jump	يقفز	jumped	jumped
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled
rain	تمطر	rained	rained
call	ينادي	called	called
believe	يصدق	believed	believed
guess	يخمن	guessed	guessed

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
tell يخبر	told	told
build يبني	built	built
grow up يكبر	grew up	grown up
hide يخبئ - يختبئ	hid	hidden

Definitions تعريفات

curious	interested, feeling you want to know more	شغوف
brick	a small block for building	قالب طوب
shocked	very surprised	مصدوم
great-grandmother	the mother of your grandparent	الجدة الكبرى
spare room	a room that is used for visitors or to put things in	غرفة احتياطية

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

The special house

البيت الخاص



Sameh and Nadine were on school vacation at home with their parents. One morning, Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small hole in the wall! Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her, but all he could feel was some paper.

كان سامح ونادين في إجازة مدرسية في المنزل مع والديهما. في صباح أحد الأيام ، كان سامح في غرفة المعيشة ، يلعب مع قطته الجديدة. فجأة ، قفزت القطة من الكرسي وركضت من خلال ثقب صغير في الحائط! وضع سامح يده في الفتحة ليحضرها ، لكن كل ما كان يلمسه هو بعض الورق.

 Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

He pulled the paper – it was very old. On it, there was a message in a child's writing: Hello, I'm Monira! I live here. Sameh felt very **curious**.

سحب الورقة - كانت قديمة جدًا. وكان مكتوبًا عليها رسالة بخط طفلة: مرحبًا! أنا منيرة! أنا أعيش هنا. شعر سامح بالفضول الشديد.

The next day, it was raining. Sameh and his sister, Nadine, were feeling bored.

في اليوم التالي ، كانت السماء تمطر. كان سامح وشقيقته نادين يشعران بالملل.

"Let's go up and look in the **spare room**," Sameh said.

قال سامح: " لنصعد وننظر في الغرفة الاحتياطية".

In the spare room, they found some old boxes. Sameh looked in one of the boxes and found a little house and a doll. The doll was beautiful, and underneath, there was a birthday card: To *Monira on your birthday, much love, Grandma.*

في الغرفة الاحتياطية ، وجدوا بعض الصناديق القديمة. نظر سامح في أحد الصناديق ووجد منزلا صغيرا ودمية. كانت الدمية جميلة ، وتحتها، بطاقة عيد ميلاد: إلى منيرة في عيد ميلادك ، كل الحب ، جدتك.

Just then, their Dad called them downstairs.

وعندئذ، استدعاهم والدهم في الطابق السفلي.

"Dad!" said Sameh "Who is Monira?" Dad looked **shocked**.

قال سامح"أبي! من هي منيرة؟" بدا أبي مصدومًا.

"Why are you asking that?" he said.

قال "لماذا تسأل عن ذلك؟".

"Look at this doll and this card!" replied Sameh.

أجاب سامح "انظر إلى هذه الدمية وهذه البطاقة!".

"I don't believe it!" said Dad, looking at the things. "Let me tell you about the history of this house. It was built from **bricks** and stone in the 1950s. My grandma – your great-grandmother – lived here with her mom, dad, and five brothers and sisters."

قال أبي، وهو ينظر إلى الأشياء"لا أصدق ذلك!" "دعني أخبرك عن تاريخ هذا المنزل. تم بناؤه من الطوب والحجر في خمسينات القرن التاسع عشر . جدتي-و جدتك الكبرى – عاشت هنا مع والدتها وأبيها وخمسة إخوة وأخوات."

"Wow! Do you think the house was very small for them?" said Nadine, "Yes," said Dad. "There were eight people and only three bedrooms!"

قالت نادين"واو! هل تعتقد أن المنزل كان صغيرا جدًا بالنسبة لهم؟"، قال أبي" نعم ، كان هناك ثمانية أشخاص وثلاث غرف نوم فقط!"

"Do you think they were happy?" asked Sameh.

سأل سامح "هل تعتقد أنهم كانوا سعداء؟".

"I think they were very happy, just like we are" said Dad.

قال أبي: "أعتقد أنهم كانوا سعداء للغاية ، تماما مثلنا".

"But is the house different now?" asked Nadine.

سألت نادين " لكن هل المنزل مختلف الآن؟".

"Well," said Dad, "not really. The walls are a different color, but I think that's all. I'm glad it hasn't changed because I have such great memories of growing up here too."

قال أبي:" حسنًا ، ليس حقا. الجدران لونها مختلف ، ولكن أعتقد أن هذا كل شيء. أنا سعيد لأنه لم يتغير لأن لدي ذكريات رائعة عن نشأتي هنا أيضًا."

"But you still haven't told us who Monira is!" said Sameh.

قال سامح "لكنك ما زلت لم تخبرنا من هي منيرة!".

"Well, you already know her," said Dad.

قال أبي:" حسنًا ، أنت تعرفها بالفعل".

"Monira was your great-grandmother – Granddad's mom! I guess you have never heard her first name before.

"منيرة كانت جدتك الكبرى! - والدة جدك أعتقد أنك لم تسمع اسمها الأول من قبل.

The things that you found are from her childhood. I'm so happy we have them! Thank you two!"

الأشياء التي وجدتها هي من طفولتها. أنا سعيد جدًا إنهم لدينا! شكرًا لكما!"

- Answer the following questions.

1. What is the message of the story?

A) Old houses are better than new houses. ( )

b) Old houses can have interesting histories. ( )

c) Old houses are dangerous to live in. ( )

2. How did Sameh feel when he found Monira's message? Why?

....

3. Why did Sameh and Nadine go into the spare room?

....

4. Why was the children's dad happy at the end of the story?

....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. In the spare .... , they found old boxes.
   a) house b) room c) balcony d) garage
2. Sameh found a .... in one of the boxes.
   a) rubber b) bag c) doll d) pen
3. There was a birthday .... underneath the doll.
   a) car b) balloon c) bike d) card
4. .... wrote "To Monira on your birthday, much love".
   a) Uncle b) Grandma c) Aunt d) Grandpa

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

bricks / history / great-grandmother / believe / paper

"I don't 1)...................... it!" said Dad, looking at the things. "Let me tell you about the 2)................ of this house. It was built from 3)...................... and stone in the1950s. My grandma – your 4)...................... – lived here with her mom, dad, and five brothers and sisters."

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... room is used for visitors or to put things in.
   a) stir b) spare c) pair d) tyre
2. Houses are built from ....
   a) rocks b) bricks c) plastic d) hills
3. Your father's grandma is your .... -grandmother.
   a) large b) young c) old d) great
4. The kitten jumped .... the chair.
   a) on b) off c) of d) at
5. ".. " means very surprised.
   a) Shocked b) Spare c) Brick d) Curious
6. To be interested, or you feel you want to know more means ....
   a) curious b) surprised c) message d) shocked

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Sameh and Nadine were on school vacation at home with their parents. One morning,Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small hole in the wall. Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her,but all he could feel was some paper. He pulled the paper – it was very old. On it, there was a message in a child's writing: Hello, I'm Monira! I live here. Sameh felt very curious. The next day, it was raining. Sameh and his sister, Nadine, were feeling bored. "Let's go up and look in the spare room," Sameh said.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sameh and Nadine were on school ....

   a) trip b) journey c) vacation d) party

2. Sameh was playing with his new ....

   a) kitten b) puppy c) cat d) dog

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did the cat do? ....
4. Where did Sameh and Nadine go? ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. found - wall - Sameh - a - the - in - hole - .

....

2. think - Do - happy - were - they - you - ?

....

6 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Family home

Guiding questions:

- How old is your home?
- Who has lived there?
- How has your home changed?
- What was it built from?

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

...ك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

My fantastic bedroom

We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom! I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends. We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV!

Caring for your cat

Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. You should stroke it. This means that you should move your hand over its back, or under its chin – cats love this! They like a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the couch! Don't wake it up – cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day! They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

Caring for your turtle

Turtles need a very large space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space! They need clean soil to dig in, too. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change. These animals like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food. They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.

Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

Review on Unit (2)

Activities

do push-ups	يقوم بعمل تمارين الضغط	play chess	يلعب شطرنج
play the violin	يعزف على الكمان	swap comic books	يتبادل الكتب المصورة
watch cartoons	يشاهد أفلام الكرتون		

Appliances and electricity

appliance	جهاز منزلي	blender	خلاط
blade	شفرة - نصل	smoothie	شراب من الفاكهة والحليب - سموثي
blender	خلاط	candle	شمعة
electricity	كهرباء	stove	بوتجاز
electric car	سيارة كهربية	games console	وحدة ألعاب إلكترونية
hairdryer	مجفف الشعر	invention	اختراع
interactive whiteboard	سبورة تفاعلية	whiteboard	سبورة
laptop	لاب توب	lighting	إضاءة
microwave oven	ميكروويف	refrigerator	لاجة
motor	موتور - محرك		

Phrasal verbs

tidy up	يرتب	clean up	ظف
hang up	يعلق	mop up	سح
pick up	يلتقط	put away	ع الأشياء في مكانها
put out	يُخرج		

Help your child revise unit (2). طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية.

Caring for animals

attention	اهتمام	collar	طوق
claws	مخالب	furry	ذو فرو
stroke	يلمس برفق	vaccinations	تطعيمات
sharpen	يشحذ (يجعله حادًا)		

Other words

brick	قالب طوب	vaccine	لقاح - مصل
break down	يتعطل	change	يغير
fix the car	يصلح السيارة	great-grandmother	الجدة الكبرى
heat food	يسخن الطعام	iron the clothes	يكوي الملابس
milkshake	الحليب المخفوق	program	يبرمج
shocked	مصدوم	curious	فضولي

Language

(If) First Conditional

If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf). ...

e.g. **If** it **is** hot tomorrow, I**'ll make** a smoothie.

If + subject + present simple , subject + (can + inf.)

e.g. **If** you **arrive** early, you **can get** a good seat.

If + subject + present simple , subject + may + inf.

e.g. **If** she **hurries**, she **may catch** the train; I'm not sure.

Phrasal Verbs

verb + preposition

e.g. I always **tidy up** my room on weekends.

Lesson (1)

- يتبادل الكتب المصورة ....
- يشاهد أفلام الكارتون ....
- ينتقل إلى ....
- يقوم بعمل تمارين الضغط ....
- يعزف على الكمان ....
- يلعب شطرنج ....

Lesson (2)

- مجفف الشعر ....
- محمصة خبز ....
- ملاط ....
- وحدة الألعاب الإلكترونية ....
- ثلاجة ....
- لاب توب ....

Lesson (3)

- سبورة تفاعلية ....
- يشرح ....
- في رأيي ....
- مقبس كهرباء ....
- كابل / سلك تمديد ....
- يجلس في دائرة ....

Lesson (4)

- فظيع ....
- بطارية ....
- هدوء ....
- يتعطل ....
- كي الملابس ....
- ببطء ....

Lesson (5)

- أرتب حجرتي ....
- يمسح الماء ....
- يعلق الملابس ....
- يخرج القمامة ....
- يلتقط الكتب ....
- ينظف المطبخ ....

Lesson (6)

- دافئ ....
- ذو فرو ....
- يوقظ ....
- اهتمام ....
- تطعيمات ....
- يهتم بـ ....

Lesson (7)

- ذكريات ....
- في المنزل ....
- قالب طوب ....
- خاص ....
- خطير ....
- شغوف - فضولي ....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (2)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mom and Dad's bedroom is .... ours.
   a) over b) on c) next to d) behind
2. Their bedroom is the same .... as ours.
   a) color b) height c) size d) sight
3. They have their own ....
   a) kitchen b) bathroom c) cupboard d) drawer
4. Our bedroom has .... for our hobbies.
   a) pace b) place c) peace d) space

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What are you learning to play?

....

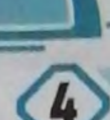
2. How many push-ups does your brother do?

....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

invention - motor - blade - blender - wood

Did you know that a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the 1) .... in 1922? He put a sharp 2) .... in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small 3) .... The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new 4) .... to make milkshakes.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends. We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I love my new ....
   a) house   b) toy   c) room   d) doll
2. I share the new room with my ...., Maged.
   a) friend   b) brother   c) cousin   d) uncle

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why do you have a long desk?

....

4. What causes much noise?

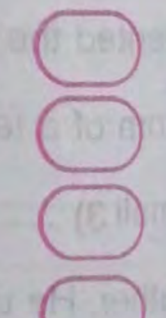
....



5 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Mom and dad were happy to see Mayar's new book.
2. Mom and Dad have been to a farm.
3. Mayar has pottery classes at lunchtime.
4. On the weekend, the parents were busy again.





Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

B Complete the following.

1. Outside the garage, he saw his dad's ....
2. Asser went to put the school bags in the open ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If it's hot tomorrow, I'll .... a smoothie.
   a) makes b) made c) make d) making
2. I think we need to clean .... the kitchen.
   a) off b) out c) down d) up
3. If my hair .... wet, I'll use a hairdryer.
   a) get b) gets c) got d) getting
4. We have to put .... the garbage tonight.
   a) in b) down c) out d) up

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. floor - The - is - kitchen - dirty - .

....

2. do - sleep - Where - turtles - ?

....

8 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Caring for your turtle

Guiding words:

(large space - eat plants - special food - special light)

....

....

....

....

Activities on Review (1)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I love watching .... after school.
   a) movies   b) plays   c) cartoons   d) matches
2. Cartoons are really ....
   a) funny   b) boring   c) amazing   d) interesting
3. There are stories about the .... , too.
   a) camel   b) horse   c) dog   d) cat
4. I sometimes swap comic books with my ....
   a) family   b) friends   c) neighbors   d) teachers

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why are you learning to use computer?

....

2. When will you be in the concert?

....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

difficult - chess - board - club - living room

One of our friends, Sherif, is an amazing 1) .... player. We both play chess at the school chess 2) .... Chess is quite 3) .... for me, but, luckily, Sherif is helping me. Maged and I like 4) .... games. We play them with our friends in our bedroom and with our family in the living room!

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the following text and answer the questions.

Yesterday it was raining, so we all stayed at home and cleaned the house. Mom and Dad gave us some chores as a challenge. We all had one hour to do our chores – Mom and Dad, too! My brother and I had to tidy up our bedrooms. I had to hung up my clothes, because I sometimes leave them on the chair. My brother had to put away his books and put them back on the shelf. Dad put out the trash. Mom cleaned up the kitchen and put away the dishes. But then, my little sister tried to mop up the juice from the floor. She spilt her drink, so the floor was very wet! We all helped to clean it up – just in time!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We all had one .... to do chores.
   a) night b) day c) minute d) hour
2. Mom cleaned up the ....
   a) living room b) bedroom c) kitchen d) bathroom

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How was the weather yesterday?

....

4. Why did you have to hang up your clothes?

....

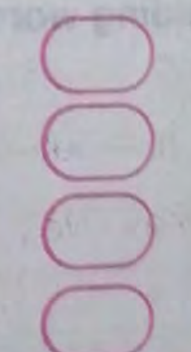


5 The Reader



Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The family all got on the bus to go home.
2. Mom is very busy this week.
3. Mayar listened to an audiobook.
4. Asser decided to take his basketball.



B Complete the following.

1. Asser wanted to ask his mom about the ....
2. "It's music club today, so don't forget your ...., Asser."

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I can mop .... the juice on the floor
   a) out b) up c) away d) into
2. If my sister ...., I talk to her
   a) cry b) crying c) cries d) cried
3. I'll hang my new clothes ....
   a) out b) about c) up d) down
4. If I tidy my room, I may .... a movie
   a) watch b) watches c) watched d) watching

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. watch - TV - usually - I - cartoons - on - .

....

2. was - vacation - school - Sameh - on - .

....

8 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Your pet

Guiding words:

(dog - place - food - equipment - vet)

....

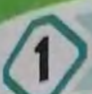
....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

PROJECT 1



Read and answer. What does Sarah want her robot to do, and why?

Design Your Own Robot Competition

Would you like a robot to help you around the house? Or maybe to help with your schoolwork? Enter our competition, and share your ideas. Write about your robot and send it in, with a picture!

هل ترغب في روبوت لمساعدتك في جميع أنحاء المنزل؟ أو ربما للمساعدة في واجباتك المدرسية؟ أدخل مسابقاتنا وشارك أفكارك. أكتب عن الروبوت الخاص بك وأرسله لنا، مع صورة!

My Robot by Sarah

What it looks like ماذا يبدو شكله	It has two round blue eyes. It has a friendly face. It has two arms and a blue body. له عينان زرقاوان مستديرتان. له وجه ودود. له ذراعان وجسم أزرق.
How big it is ما حجمه	It's small. It's about the same size as my cat! إنه صغير. نفس حجم قطتي!
What it is made from مم يصنع	It's made from plastic and metal. إنه مصنوع من البلاستيك والمعدن.
How it moves كيف يتحرك	It has two wheels, and it can travel quickly. له عجلتان، ويمكنه التحرك بسرعة.
What it can do and why ماذا يمكن أن يفعل ولماذا	It has two arms so it can pick up books. It can tidy up my room! I'm not very good at keeping my bedroom tidy, so I need some help! له ذراعان حتى يتمكن من التقاط الكتب. يمكن أن يرتب غرفتي! أنا لست جيدًا في الحفاظ على غرفة نومي مرتبة ، لذلك أحتاج إلى بعض المساعدة!



Write your fact file for your robot. Then draw a picture in your notebook

What it looks like	
How big it is	
What it is made from	
How it moves	
What it can do and why	

Help your child write about his / her robot.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الروبوت الخاص به.



Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

HASSAN FATHY: A BIOGRAPHY

حسن فتحي: سيرة ذاتية

1) Hassan Fathy's childhood and early life:

Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian architect. He was born in Alexandria in 1900. When he was eight, Hassan and his family moved to Cairo. His father was a police officer, but later changed jobs to become a teacher. As a child, Hassan was creative, and his family encouraged him to do different things. He loved drawing and painting, and he was very good at math.



The famous workplace

طفولة حسن فتحي وبداية حياته: كان حسن فتحي مهندسًا معماريًا مصريًا مشهورًا. ولد في الإسكندرية عام ١٩٠٠. عندما كان في الثامنة من عمره ، انتقل حسن وعائلته إلى القاهرة. كان والده ضابط شرطة ، لكنه غير وظيفته لاحقًا ليصبح مدرسًا. عندما كان طفلًا ، كان حسن مبدعًا ، وشجعته عائلته على القيام بأشياء مختلفة. كان يحب الرسم والتلوين ، وكان جيدًا جدًا في الرياضيات.

2) Hassan Fathy's career: When he was an adult, Hassan studied **architecture** at Cairo University, and he taught the subject in Cairo in the 1920s and 1930s. Later, he worked as an architect. As he got older, Fathy became famous for building comfortable, **attractive** houses using **low-cost** materials. He wanted his houses to have Egyptian character. His new buildings had **features** from traditional Egyptian homes, for example, **domed** roofs and **mud bricks**. They kept the houses cool in the hot weather.



A domed roof at New Gourna

حياة حسن فتحي المهنية: عندما كان بالغًا ، درس حسن الهندسة المعمارية في جامعة القاهرة ، وقام بتدريس هذا الموضوع في القاهرة في عشرينيات وثلاثينات القرن الماضي. في وقت لاحق ، عمل كمهندس معماري. مع تقدمه في السن ، اشتهر فتحي ببناء منازل مريحة وجذابة باستخدام مواد منخفضة التكلفة. أراد أن يكون لمنازله صبغه مصرية. كانت مبانيه الجديدة لها خصائص البيوت المصرية التقليدية ، على سبيل المثال ، أسقف مقببة وطوب طيني. حافظت على برودة المنازل في الطقس الحار.

3) Famous projects and awards Fathy's first big project began in the 1940s. It was New Gourna, which is a very interesting village. The village is near Luxor. The people there needed to move because their homes were too close to the Valley of the Kings. Fathy built new homes for the people in the traditional style, at low cost.

المشاريع والجوائز الشهيرة: بدأ أول مشروع كبير لفتحي في أربعينات القرن الماضي. كانت نيو جورنا ، وهي قرية مثيرة للاهتمام للغاية. تقع القرية بالقرب من الأقصر. كان الناس هناك بحاجة إلى الانتقال لأن منازلهم كانت قريبة جدًا من وادي الملوك. بنى فتحي منازل جديدة للناس على الطراز التقليدي بتكلفة منخفضة.

H... your c...d listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

In the 1950s, Fathy built other public buildings, for example, schools, for Egypt's Ministry of Education. You can find his buildings all over Egypt and around the world, for example, in New Mexico in the USA. Fathy received the Aga Khan Chairman's Award for Architecture and an international award for his designs, both in 1980. He lived in Cairo until 1989, when he died at the age of 89.

Hassan Fathy, Egyptian architect

في الخمسينات ، بنى فتحي مبان عامة أخرى ، مثل المدارس ، لوزارة التربية والتعليم المصرية. يمكنك أن تجد مبانيه في جميع أنحاء مصر وحول العالم ، على سبيل المثال ، في نيو مكسيكو بالولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. حصل فتحي على جائزة رئيس الآغا خان للهندسة المعمارية وجائزة دولية لتصميماته، وكلاهما في عام ١٩٨٠. عاش في القاهرة حتى عام ١٩٨٩ ، عندما توفي عن عمر يناهز ٨٩ عاما.

4) Why Hassan Fathy is an important person: Today, we can see that Hassan Fathy's work is important for three reasons. Firstly, he understood that traditional architecture was great for his country. Secondly, he respected the people who lived in his buildings. The houses he built are very comfortable, and they work well for the people who live in them. Thirdly, he knew it is important to build for the local climate. His houses have high domed roofs and thick mud walls to keep them cool.

لماذا يعتبر حسن فتحي شخصية هامة: اليوم ، يمكننا أن نرى أن عمل حسن فتحي مهم لثلاثة أسباب. أولًا ، لقد فهم أن الهندسة المعمارية التقليدية كانت رائعة لبلده. ثانيا ، كان يحترم الناس الذين يعيشون في مبانيه. المنازل التي بناها كانت مريحة للغاية ، وهي مناسبة جدًا للأشخاص الذين يعيشون فيها. ثالثًا ، كان يعلم أنه من المهم البناء من أجل المناخ المحلي. تحتوي منازله على أسقف مقببة عالية وجدران طينية سميكة لإبقائها باردة.

Read again and write the answers to the questions

1. Which two cities did Hassan Fathy live in as a child?

....

2. What are the special features of Hassan Fathy's buildings?

....

3. Which countries can you see Hassan Fathy's buildings in?

....

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

New Baris

Planning a new village: In the 1960s, an organization (called the ODD) asked Hassan Fathy to design a village in the desert at Kharga for the farmers. There were two challenges. Firstly, it was important to keep the village cool for the people there. Sometimes, the temperature rose to 50 degrees in the desert at Kharga. Secondly, the farmers needed water for their crops and families. They needed to find water before building the new houses.

التخطيط لقرية جديدة: في الستينيات من القرن العشرين ، طلبت منظمة (تسمى ODD) من حسن فتحي تصميم قرية في الصحراء في الخارجة للمزارعين. كان هناك تحديان. أولًا ، كان من المهم الحفاظ على برودة القرية للناس هناك. في بعض الأحيان ، ترتفع درجة الحرارة إلى ٥٠ درجة في الصحراء في الخارجة. ثانيا ، يحتاج المزارعون إلى المياه لمحاصيلهم وعائلاتهم. كانوا بحاجة إلى العثور على المياه قبل بناء المنازل الجديدة.

Building in the desert: The ODD had a team of builders. Luckily, the builders found a **well** and they were very happy. Hassan Fathy could start building. He began work in 1963. To keep the village houses cool, they were made of mud bricks. The village also had **windcatchers** – they are tall buildings which hold hot air and cool it down.


A well at New Baris

البناء في الصحراء: كان لدى منظمة (ODD) فريق من عمال البناء. لحسن الحظ ، وجد عمال البناء بئرًا وكانوا سعداء جدًا. يمكن أن يبدأ حسن فتحي البناء. بدأ العمل في عام ١٩٦٣. للحفاظ على برودة منازل القرية ، كانت مصنوعة من الطوب اللبن. كان للقرية أيضًا مصدات للرياح وهي مباني شاهقة تحبس الهواء الساخن وتبرده.

Fathy carefully studied the position of the sun and designed the area so that the buildings gave shade to people in the streets.

درس فتحي موقع الشمس بعناية وصمم المنطقة بحيث توفر المباني الظل للناس في الشوارع.


A windcatcher

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

He started with his domed roofs for the houses. Then, he added a taktabosh **courtyard**, which provided a shaded seating area outside. Hassan Fathy added the suk and other buildings for the people. He believed it was important to create communities, not just houses.

وبدأ بالأسقف المقببة للمنازل. ثم أضاف فناء تكتابوش ، الذي وفر منطقة جلوس مظللة بالخارج. أضاف حسن فتحي السوق والمباني الأخرى للناس. كان يعتقد أنه من المهم إنشاء مجتمعات ، وليس فقط منازل.

New Baris now: Sadly, New Baris is unfinished. Work on it stopped in 1967, but today you can still see the suk, the main town hall, the beginning of the museum and social center, and some villas. You can see and respect Hassan Fathy's designs. Hassan Fathy wanted to create a community of farmers in the middle of the desert. He wanted to give the farmers a fantastic place to live.



A courtyard at New Baris

باريس الجديدة الآن: للأسف، باريس الجديد لم تكتمل. توقف العمل فيها في عام ١٩٦٧ ، ولكن اليوم لا يزال بإمكانك رؤية السوق ، قاعة المدينة الرئيسية ، وبداية المتحف والمركز الاجتماعي ، وبعض الفيلات. يمكنك أن ترى وتحترم تصاميم حسن فتحي. أراد حسن فتحي إنشاء مجتمع من المزارعين في وسط الصحراء. أراد أن يمنح المزارعين مكانا رائعا للعيش فيه.

Read again and circle

1. Hassan Fathy needed to build a village in the **(courtyard - desert)**.
2. There wasn't enough **(sun - water)** for the people at Kharga.
3. Hassan used mud bricks and **(wells - windcatchers)** to make the houses cool.
4. Fathy researched how to give the streets **(water - shade)**.
5. Fathy designed a whole community, not just **(roofs - houses)**.

Unit 3 School time!

Learning about science in a laboratory

In this unit, the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

- read and understand an article about different kinds of classrooms.
  يقرأ ويفهم مقال عن أنواع مختلفة من الفصول الدراسية.
- understand and use words for schools and education.
  يفهم ويستخدم الكلمات الخاصة بالمدارس والتعليم.
- understand and use adverbs of frequency.
  يفهم ويستخدم ظروف التكرار.
- listen to and understand descriptions of school clubs.
  يستمع إلى أوصاف النوادي المدرسية ويفهمها.
- use make me + adjective to describe his / her feelings.
  يستخدم (صفة + make me) لوصف مشاعره.
- understand and use reported speech. يفهم ويستخدم الكلام غير المباشر.
- read and understand a brochure. يقرأ ويفهم كتيب.
- give reasons for his / her opinion in writing. يقدم أسباب لرأيه كتابة
- read and understand stories. يقرأ ويفهم القصص.

Lesson (1) DIFFERENT CLASSROOMS

Key vocabulary

مفردات رئيسية

green roofs	أسطح خضراء	subject	مادة دراسية
nomadic	بدو رُحّل (محب للتنقل)	timetable	جدول الحصص
sleds	زلاجات	flexible	مَرن
reindeer	حيوان الرنّة (الأيل)	mobile	متنقل / متحرك
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	tents	خيام

Extra vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

classrooms	فصول دراسية	traditional skills	مهارات تقليدية
roof garden	حديقة السطح	culture's language	لغة الثقافة
space	حيز / مكان	math	رياضيات
outdoor places	أماكن خارجية	science	علوم
calm	هادئ	computing	الحوسبة / الكمبيوتر
healthy	صحي	chores	أعمال / مهام منزلية
frozen	متجمد	outside	بالخارج

Definitions

تعريفات

mobile	can move	متنقل / متحرك
flexible	can change easily	مَرن
timetable	a schedule with times of all your school classes on it	جدول الحصص
boarding school	a school where children live and only go home at vacation times	مدرسة داخلية
subject	a topic that you study at school for example , math , English, history, science	مادة دراسية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
cool	يبرد	cooled	cooled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
bring	يجلب / يُحضر	brought	brought
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
teach	يُعَلِمّ	taught	taught
build	يبني	built	built
say	يقول	said	said
grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew	grown
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

The Shagara at School project			مشروع تشجير المدارس
not the same	ليست نفس الشيء	on the roof	على السطح
a little different	مختلف قليلًا	on the move	دائم الترحال
the hot dry weather	الطقس الحار الجاف	on ice and snow	على الثلج والجليد
snowy land	أرض جليدية	on wheels	يمشي على عجلات
get an education	يتلقى تعليم	bring ... into ...	يجلب ... لـ ...
grow well	ينمو بشكل جيد	in the shade	في الظل
stay with	يقيم مع	good for	مفيد لـ

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Notes:

A green roof is a garden on the top of a building.
Green roofs are good for the environment because they bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air.
Nomadic people don't live in one place. They travel in sleds across the frozen land and sleep in tents.
Nomadic school is a school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or mobile rooms on wheels.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Classrooms of the world

Classrooms are not the same in every school. Here are two places where classrooms are a little different.

الفصول الدراسية ليست نفس الشيء في كل مدرسة. هناك مكانان حيث الفصول الدراسية مختلفة قليلاً.


A roof garden in a city

Classrooms on the roof!

الفصول الدراسية على السطح!

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school!

في مصر، بعض الصفوف الدراسية تتلقى دروسها في حديقة على سطح المدرسة!

The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green roofs for schools in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air. That means that they are great for the environment.

يقوم مشروع تشجير المدرسة بتصميم الحدائق والأسطح الخضراء للمدارس في مصر. الأسطح الخضراء هي حدائق على قمة المبنى. يجلبون الطبيعة إلى المدينة. كما أنها تنظف وتبرد الهواء. هذا يعني أنها رائعة للبيئة.

The project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden. They learn about which plants grow well in the hot, dry weather. In 2017, classes at one school started going to their green roofs for lessons. People at the project thought this was an amazing idea!

يعلم المشروع الطلاب والمعلمين كيفية زراعة حديقة على السطح. يتعلمون عن النباتات التي تنمو بشكل جيد في الطقس الحار والجاف. في عام ٢٠١٧ ، بدأت الصفوف الدراسية في إحدى المدارس بالذهاب إلى أسطحها الخضراء للدروس. أعتقد الناس في المشروع أن هذه كانت فكرة رائعة!

In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the shade, but there are no walls. Students and teachers have space and can see the flowers and plants.

في عام ٢٠١٩ ، قاموا ببناء أول فصل دراسي لهم على السطح. المقاعد في الظل ، لكن لا توجد جدران. الطلاب والمعلمين لديهم مكان ويمكنهم رؤية الزهور والنباتات.

The Shagara at School Project says roof gardens can help students in many city schools. Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy – and that is great for learning.

يقول مشروع تشجير المدرسة إن حدائق الأسطح يمكن أن تساعد الطلاب في العديد من مدارس المدينة. الأماكن الخارجية الخضراء تجعلنا هادئين وبصحة جيدة - وهذا أمر رائع للتعلم.

Classrooms on the move! الفصول الدراسية المتنقلة!


Nomadic children help to look after reindeer

In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in tents on the ice and snow! Many people in the North of Siberia are **nomadic**. This means that they don't live in one place. They travel in **sleds** across the frozen land and sleep in tents. They look after **reindeer** and take them to where there is food.

في شمال سيبيريا ، يتلقى بعض الطلاب دروسهم في الخيام على الجليد والثلج! كثير من الناس في شمال سيبيريا هم من البدو الرحل. هذا يعني أنهم لا يعيشون في مكان واحد. يسافرون في زلاجات عبر الأرض المتجمدة وينامون في الخيام. إنهم يعتنون بحيوان "الرنة" ويأخذونها إلى حيث يوجد طعام.

So, how do their children get an education? There are two ways. First, some children go away to **boarding school**. These children are away from their families for many months every year. They can't learn traditional skills from their parents, and they often forget their culture's language.

وبالتالي، كيف يحصل أطفالهم على التعليم؟ هناك طريقتان. أولاً، يذهب بعض الأطفال إلى المدرسة الداخلية. هؤلاء الأطفال بعيدون عن عائلاتهم لعدة أشهر كل عام. لا يمكنهم تعلم المهارات التقليدية من والديهم، وغالبا ما ينسون لغة ثقافتهم.

The second way is nomadic school. This is a school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or **mobile** rooms on wheels. The children study school **subjects** like math, science, and computing. However, they also study their own language and traditional skills. The **timetable** is **flexible**, so they can help their families with the chores.

الطريقة الثانية هي المدرسة البدوية. هذه مدرسة تسافر مع العائلات. الفصول الدراسية عبارة عن خيام على الجليد ، أو غرف متنقلة على عجلات. يدرس الأطفال المواد الدراسية مثل الرياضيات والعلوم والحوسبة. ومع ذلك ، فإنهم يدرسون أيضا لغتهم ومهاراتهم التقليدية. جدول الحصص مرن ، حتى يتمكنوا من مساعدة أسرهم في الأعمال المنزلية.

At nomadic school, the children are happy because they can stay with their families and get a good education. They learn everything about how to live in their snowy land!

في مدرسة البدو الرحل ، يكون الأطفال سعداء لأنهم يستطيعون البقاء مع عائلاتهم والحصول على تعليم جيد. يتعلمون كل شيء عن كيفية العيش في أرضهم الثلجية!

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a ....
   a) club b) garden c) shop d) station
2. The Shagara at School project designs gardens and .... roofs.
   a) white b) blue c) green d) yellow
3. Green roofs are gardens on the .... of a building.
   a) top b) side c) bottom d) front
4. They bring nature into the ....
   a) house b) country c) village d) city

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What are the people in the North of Siberia?

....

2. How do they travel across the frozen land?

....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

shade - space - amazing - roofs - amazed

In 2017, classes at one school started going to their green 1)............... for lessons. People at the project thought this was an 2)........................ idea! In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the 3)........................ , but there are no walls. Students and teachers have 4)...................... and can see the flowers and plants.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. ".." means it can move.
   a) Mobile b) Flexible c) Amazing d) Boarding
2. ".." means it can change easily.
   a) Frozen b) Nomadic c) Mobile d) Flexible
3. ....people don't live in one place.
   a) Creative b) Scientific c) Nomadic d) Athletic
4. In Northern Siberia, people travel in ....
   a) cars b) buses c) trains d) sleds
5. Nomadic people look after ....and take them to where there is food.
   a) reindeer b) donkeys c) camels d) horses
6. Some children go away to a ....school.
   a) broading b) boarding c) breeding d) breading
7. Some classrooms are tents on the ice, or ....rooms on wheels.
   a) mobile b) still c) fixed d) stable
8. The children study school ....like math, science, and computing.
   a) objects b) magazines c) subjects d) stories
9. The ....is flexible, so the students can help their families.
   a) timetable b) time c) table d) tablet
10. The children can help their families with the ....
    a) cars b) tables c) subjects d) chores

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. aren't - in every - school - same - Classrooms - the - .

....

2. a building - the top of - on - Green - gardens - are - roofs - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in tents on the ice and snow. So, how do their children get an education? There are two ways. First, some children go away to a boarding school. These children are away from their families for many months every year. They can't learn traditional skills from their parents, and they often forget their culture's language. The second way is nomadic school. This is a school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or mobile rooms on wheels. The children study school subjects like math, science, and computing. However, they also study their own language and traditional skills. The timetable is flexible, so they can help their families with the chores.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. At a .... school, children are away from their families.

   a) nomadic   b) boarding   c) broading   d) city

2. The classrooms in nomadic schools are .... on the ice.

   a) shops   b) rooms   c) tents   d) laboratories

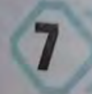
B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why can't students at a boarding school learn traditional skills?

....

4. What subjects can students study in nomadic school?

....



7 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Classrooms on the move

Guiding words:

(nomadic - sleds - reindeer - boarding school - nomadic schools)

....

....

....

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary
مفردات رئيسية

uniform	زي موحد	neat	أنيق
cafeteria	كافيتريا	ICT	تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات

Extra Vocabulary
مفردات إضافية

Bangladesh	دولة بنجلاديش	summer	الصيف
middle school	مدرسة متوسطة	dirty	قذر - متسخ
kindergarten	الروضة / الحضانة	cycle	يركب دراجة
toy	لعبة	school trip	رحلة مدرسية
dry	جاف	have sandwiches	يتناول ساندوتشات
sunny	مشمس	rainy	ممطر

Definitions
تعريفات

cafeteria	a place where students eat lunch.	كافيتريا
ICT	a subject where you study and use computers.	مادة تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات
middle school	a school for children aged between 9 and 13	مدرسة متوسطة
neat	clean and tidy, not messy or dirty.	أنيق
school uniform	clothes that are the same for every student.	زي مدرسي

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
have - has	يملك - يتناول	had	had
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
keep	يحفظ - يحافظ	kept	kept

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Lilly, USA

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in Kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects, like **ICT**. I like using computers!

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school **uniform**, but my clothes and shoes have to be **neat**. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the **cafeteria**, or outside in summer.

مرحبًا ، اسمي ليلي ، وأنا أذهب إلى المدرسة المتوسطة في سان فرانسيسكو ، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. بدأت الدراسة في روضة الأطفال عندما كنت في السادسة من عمري. الآن أنا في الحادية عشرة من عمري ، وأنا في الصف السادس. أنا أحب مدرستي. في روضة الأطفال ، لعبنا كثيرًا ، وكان هناك دائمًا الكثير من الألعاب في الفصل. نحن نقوم بالكتابة أكثر الآن في الصف السادس ، ونحن ندرس مواد أكثر إثارة للاهتمام ، مثل تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات. أحب استخدام أجهزة الكمبيوتر!

نذهب إلى المدرسة من الاثنين إلى الجمعة. لست مضطرة لارتداء الزي المدرسي ، لكن يجب أن تكون ملابسي وأحذيتي أنيقة. تبدأ المدرسة في الثامنة صباحًا وتنتهي في الثالثة مساءً. غالبًا ما أمشي إلى المدرسة عندما يكون الجو جافًا ومشمسًا. في بعض الأحيان أركب الحافلة مع أصدقائي. لدينا ساعة لتناول طعام الغداء ، وعادة ما أحضر الغداء من المنزل. أنا آكل في الكافتيريا ، أو في الخارج في الصيف.

- Read again and answer the questions.

1. Which school does Lilly go to?

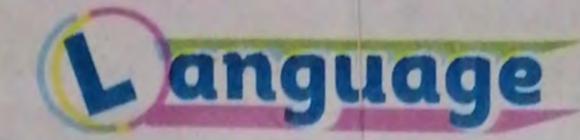
....

2. How does Lilly go to school?

....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

- We can use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often something happens.

يمكن أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن عدد المرات التي يحدث فيها الفعل.

- They are used to describe habits or routines.

تستخدم في وصف العادات والروتين.

always	●	●	●	●
usually	●	●	●	○
often	●	●	○	○
sometimes	●	○	○	○
never	○	○	○	○

- Adverbs of frequency come before the main verb, but after the verb to be.

تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي ولكن بعد الفعل "be".

e.g. She often walks to school.

e.g. I am never late for school.

- We use How often...? to ask about adverbs of frequency.

نستخدم (كم مرة ...؟) للسؤال عن ظروف التكرار.

e.g. How often do you go to the cinema?
I never go to the cinema.

كما يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات في الإجابة أيضًا.

once	مرة	twice	مرتان
three times	ثلاث مرات	every (day)	كل (يوم)

e.g. How often does she visit her aunt?
She visits her aunt once a week

Help your child use adverbs of frequency.

ساعد طفلك يستخدم ظروف التكرار.

Remember — The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / plural noun + inf.

e.g. We **study** English at school.

He / She / It / singular noun + (v + s, es, ies)

e.g. She **gets** the bus with her friends.

Negative النفي

I / We / You / They / plural noun + don't + inf.

e.g. They **don't drink** coffee.

He / She / It / singular noun + doesn't + inf.

e.g. He **doesn't walk** to school.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

Do + I / they / you / we / plural noun + inf. ...?

e.g. **Do** you **like** English?

Yes, I do. No, I don't.

Does + he / she / it / singular noun + inf. ...?

e.g. **Does** Omar **have** apples?

Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

Wh– question

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + inf. ...?

e.g. **Where do** you **live**?

When does he **get up**?

Help your child revise the present simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع زمن المضارع البسيط



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I .... to middle school in San Francisco.
   a) go b) goes c) going d) to go
2. She .... her school.
   a) like b) likes c) liking d) to like
3. How .... Ali go to school?
   a) do b) does c) is d) was
4. He .... to school.
   a) always walk b) walks often c) walks never d) always walks
5. How many days .... Omar study every week?
   a) do b) does c) is d) was
6. We .... to school on Friday.
   a) go never b) go always c) never go d) never goes
7. She .... to school.
   a) often walk b) often walks c) walk often d) walks often

2 Correct the underlined words.

1. I **get sometimes** the bus with my friends. (........................)
2. She always **eat** in the cafeteria. (........................)
3. I usually **brings** lunch from home. (........................)
4. My clothes **always are** neat. (........................)
5. School always **start** a 8 am. (........................)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... goes to primary school.
   a) Amr b) Omar c) Lilly d) Leila
2. Omar's school is in ....
   a) Giza b) Aswan c) Luxor d) Cairo
3. Omar is .... years old now.
   a) nine b) ten c) eleven d) twelve
4. Omar would like to be a ....
   a) teacher b) doctor c) pilot d) vet

2 Read and match.

1) cafeteria	a) a subject where you study and use computers
2) ICT	b) clean and tidy, not messy or dirty
3) neat	c) clothes that are the same for every student
4) school uniform	d) a place where students eat lunch

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I like .... I like using computers.
   a) ICT b) TIC c) CIT d) ITC
2. I don't have to wear a school ....
   a) bag b) uniform c) galabeya d) shorts
3. My clothes and shoes have to be ....
   a) messy b) dirty c) neat d) net
4. I eat in the ...., or outside in summer.
   a) table b) desk c) wall d) cafeteria

5. I don't have a bike. I .... cycle to school

a) always b) often c) usually d) never

6. It's a school rule to wear a uniform, so I .... wear it

a) never b) usually c) always d) often

7. We go to the museum once or twice a year. We .... there

a) always go b) sometimes go
c) never go d) often go

8. My lunch .... a sandwich in the cafeteria

a) always is b) often is c) never is d) is often

9. My desk .... neat

a) is sometimes b) sometimes is
c) never is d) often is

10. Lilly .... to school

a) never walk b) never walks c) walk never d) walks alawys

11. Lilly .... lunch from home

a) sometimes bring b) sometime brings
c) brings never d) brings always

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. gets - with - the bus - Lilly - her friends - always - .

....

2. floods - Bangladesh - in - There - always - are - .

....

3. to - does - go - How - school - Aban - ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in Kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers!

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lilly started school in .... when she was six.
   - a) middle school
   - b) kindergarten
   - c) High school
   - d) boarding school
2. Lilly is in Grade ....
   - a) three
   - b) four
   - c) five
   - d) six

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When does Lilly go to school?

....

4. Where does Lilly have her lunch?

....

6 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Your daily routine

Guiding words:

(wake up - breakfast - go to school - lunch - homework)

....

....

Lesson (3)

Key vocabulary فردات رئيسية


swimming club
نادي السباحة


cooking club
نادي الطهي


music club
نادي الموسيقى


football club
نادي كرة القدم

Extra Vocabulary فردات إضافية

chess	شطرنج	bored	شاعر بالملل
art club	نادي الفنون / الرسم	excited	متحمس
happy	سعيد	healthy	صحي
unhappy	حزين	relaxed	رتاح - مسترخي
hungry	جوعان	terrific	ائع
proud	فخور	tired	رهق - متعب
join	ينضم إلى	friendly	دود
mind	عقل	paint (ed)	ون

Important expressions and prepositions يرات وحروف جر هامة

shoot goals	يسدد أهداف	join in friendly match	ارك في مباريات ودية
watch videos	يشاهد فيديوهات	play chess	ب شطرنج
enter competitions	يدخل مسابقات	play music	ف موسيقى
make things	يصنع أشياء	sad plays	رحيات حزينة
watch cartoons	يشاهد أفلام كرتون		

Help your child identify these words.
د طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Language

- Use (make / makes me) to talk about how you feel because of something or someone. استخدم الفعل (make me) بمعنى (يجعلني) للحديث عن شعورك بسبب شخص أو شيء ما.

Subject فاعل + make(s) me + adjective صفة

e.g. I have some friends. ⟶ I am happy.
My friends make me happy.

- You can also use make me with a verb to talk about how you feel because of an activity. يمكنك استخدام (make me) مع فعل للحديث عن شعورك بسبب نشاط ما.

Subject فاعل (v +ing) + make(s) me (feel) + adjective صفة

e.g. I play tennis. ⟶ I get healthy.
Playing tennis makes me feel healthy.
Running makes me feel healthy.
Books make me feel relaxed.
Art makes me feel relaxed.

Read the posters.

Art Club!

Everyone knows that art is good for your mind. It makes you relaxed and happy. Come to the art room at 1 pm on Tuesdays to learn to draw and paint.



يعلم الجميع أن الفن جيد لعقلك. يجعلك مسترخي وسعيد. تعال إلى غرفة الرسم في الواحدة مساءً يوم الثلاثاء لكي تتعلم الرسم والتلوين.

Tennis is terrific!

Tennis is a great sport. It makes you healthy and happy! We have classes every Wednesday at 4 pm. Join our club to learn a new skill and meet new people!



التنس رياضة رائعة. تجعلك بصحة جيدة وسعيداً! لدينا حصص كل أربعاء الساعة الرابعة مساءً. انضم لكي تتعلم مهارة جديد وتقابل أناس جدداً!

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How does tennis make you feel? ....
2. When do you have tennis classes? ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Playing music for my parents .... me proud.
   a) make b) makes c) making d) to make
2. Cooking club always makes .... hungry.
   a) me b) I c) his d) they
3. .... makes me healthy and strong.
   a) Swimming b) Swim c) To swim d) Swim
4. Sad plays .... me unhappy.
   a) make b) makes c) making d) to make
5. Running .... me healthy.
   a) make b) making c) makes d) to make
6. Reading books makes me .... relaxed.
   a) felt b) feel c) feels d) will feel
7. .... cartoons makes us feel relaxed.
   a) Watch b) Watches c) Watched d) Watching
8. Playing chess makes me ....
   a) excited b) excitedly c) happily d) sadly

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. good - your - for - Art - mind - is - .

   ....
2. me - happy - Swimming - feel - makes - .

   ....
3. can - goals - shoot - Children - football - at - club - .

   ....
4. matches - The children - friendly - in - join - .

   ....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (4) GREEN CITY SCHOOL

Key vocabulary
مفردات رئيسية

Open day	اليوم المفتوح	solar panels	ألواح شمسية
passionate	متحمس - شغوف	recycling	إعادة التدوير
green	نظيفة - صديقة للبيئة	demonstration	عرض توضيحي
principal	مدير المدرسة	eco-playground	ملعب بيئي

Extra vocabulary
مفردات إضافية

environment	بيئة	nature trail	مسار طبيعي
schedule	جدول	chance	فرصة
presentation	عرض - تقديم	car park	موقف السيارات
tour	جولة	give advice	يقدم النصح
electricity	كهرباء	in charge of	مسئول عن
waste	نفايات	bike shed	سقيفة دراجات
climbing frame	إطار التسلق		

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
head	يتجه	headed	headed
sort	يفرز - يصنف	sorted	sorted
harm	يضر - يؤذي	harmed	harmed
persuade	يقنع	persuaded	persuaded
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	encouraged

Definitions
تعريفات

environmentally friendly	It doesn't harm the environment.	صديقة للبيئة
passionate	having strong feelings.	شغوف / عاطفي / متحمس

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

principal	the person in charge of a school	مدير المدرسة
demonstration	when you show other people how to do or make something	عرض توضيحي
encourage	persuade someone to do something by giving them advice or support	يشجع
Eco-playground	a playground that does not harm the environment	ملعب بيئي

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Green City School Open Day

At Green City School, we are passionate about helping the environment. Come and find out why we are the greenest school in the city!

في مدرسة جرين سيتي ، نحن متحمسون لمساعدة البيئة. تعال واكتشف لماذا نحن أكثر المدارس الصديقة للبيئة في المدينة!

New students and their families are welcome to join us for our **Open Day** on 25th May.

الطلاب الجدد وأسرهم مدعوون للانضمام إلينا في يومنا المفتوح في ٢٥ مايو.

Our Green Library

Open day schedule: جدول اليوم المفتوح:

9 am New students and families arrive at the school
Presentation by the **principal**

٩ صباحا يصل الطلاب الجدد والعائلات إلى المدرسة
عرض يقدمه المدير

10 am Tour of the school buildings
First, see our new Green Library. Why is it green?
Because all its electricity comes from solar panels on the roof

Then, we head to the Recycling Room. This is where we can recycle paper, plastic, and other materials.
Watch a **demonstration** about how we sort the waste from our classrooms

١٠ صباحا جولة في مباني المدرسة
أولا، تعال لرؤية مكتبتنا الجديدة الصديقة للبيئة. لماذا هي صديقة للبيئة؟ لأن كل الكهرباء تأتي من الألواح الشمسية على السطح ثم نتوجه إلى غرفة إعادة التدوير. هذا هو المكان الذي يمكننا فيه إعادة تدوير الورق والبلاستيك والمواد الأخرى.
شاهد عرض توضيحي حول كيفية فرز النفايات من الفصول الدراسية

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

After that, come and see our **Eco-playground**.
The climbing frame is made mostly with recycled materials. There is also a nature trail around the playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects.



Our Eco-playground

بعد ذلك ، تعال وشاهد ملعبنا البيئي. يتكون إطار التسلق في الغالب من مواد معاد تدويرها. يوجد أيضًا مسار طبيعي حول الملعب ، حيث يمكننا التعرف على النباتات والحيوانات والحشرات.

12 pm Enjoy a delicious lunch in our School Garden, where we grow our own flowers, fruit, and vegetables

١٢ ظهرًا استمتع بوجبة غداء لذيذة في حديقة مدرستنا ، حيث نزرع الزهور والفواكه والخضروات الخاصة بنا

1 pm Any questions? This is your chance to ask the Green School students and teachers! There is a small car park, but we encourage you to walk, cycle, or come by bus!

١ ظهرًا أي أسئلة؟ هذه هي فرصتك لسؤال طلاب المدرسة الصديقة للبيئة والمعلمين! يوجد موقف سيارات صغير، لكننا نشجعك على المشي أو ركوب الدراجة أو القدوم بالحافلة!

Read the text. What is special about Green City School?

1. It has new school buildings. ( )
2. It is very environmentally friendly. ( )
3. It has a lot of green space. ( )

Answer the following questions.

1. What's happening on 25th May?

....

2. What's the Recycling Room?

....

3. What does "green" mean?

....

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Open Day is on 25th ....
   a) April b) May c) June d) November
2. New students and their families arrive at ....
   a) 11 am b) 1 pm c) 9 am d) 9 pm
3. Who gives the presentation? ....
   a) Students b) Teachers c) The principal d) The director
4. All the school electricity comes from ....
   a) lunar panels b) solar panels c) High Dam d) station

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. " .... " means environmentally friendly
   a) Red b) Blue c) Green d) Black
2. The .... is in charge of a school
   a) director b) principal c) chef d) teacher
3. We are .... about helping the environment
   a) passionate b) tired c) bored d) interested
4. We can recycle ....
   a) water b) clothes c) plastic d) trees
5. We can learn about plants, animals, and insects at a ....
   a) theater b) zoo c) nature trail d) library
6. We can get electricity from .... on the roof
   a) trees b) solar panels c) wood d) poles
7. You can watch a .... about how we sort the waste
   a) hill b) demonstration c) store d) shop

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. are- the city- We - the greenest- in- school- .

....

2. encourage- We - to walk- you- cycle- or- .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

New students and their families are welcome to join us for our Open Day on 25th May.

Open day schedule:

9 am New students and families arrive at the school
Presentation by the principal

10 am Tour of the school buildings First, see our new Green Library. Why is it green? Because all its electricity comes from solar panels on the roof
Then, we head to the Recycling Room. This is where we can recycle paper, plastic, and other materials. Watch a demonstration about how we sort the waste from our classrooms. After that, come and see our Eco-playground. The climbing frame is made mostly with recycled materials.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The principal gives a ....
   a) speech b) demonstration
   c) presentation d) presents
2. "Eco-playground" doesn't harm the ....
   a) school b) environment c) students d) library

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does the school tour start? ....
4. What's the demonstration about? ....

5 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

How to make our school greener

Guiding words:
(solar panels - trees - recycle - bike shed - walk- sort waste)

....

....

....

Lesson (5) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary مفردات رئيسية

bridge	جسر - كوبري	repair	يصلح
collapse	ينهار	journey	رحلة
steep	شديد الانحدار	metal bridge	جسر معدني

Extra vocabulary مفردات إضافية

awake	مستيقظ	mountains	جبال
crash	تصادم - تحطم	sports center	مركز رياضي
eventually	في النهاية	way	طريق
square	ميدان	builders	عمال بناء
traffic	المرور	storm	عاصفة
sleepy	نعسان	surprise	دهشة / مفاجأة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

over the river	فوق النهر	arrive at + مكان	يصل لـ
get to the town	يصل المدينة	all over the country	في كل أنحاء البلد
stay at home	يبقى في البيت	smile at	يبتسم لـ
do work online	يقوم بالعمل على الإنترنت	a man in a yellow coat	رجل يرتدي معطف أصفر
get on the bus	يركب الحافلة	on the other side	على الجانب الآخر
walk up the hill	يصعد التل		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
last	يدوم	lasted	lasted
point	يشير	pointed	pointed
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
come up	تطلع / تشرق	came up	come up
drive	يقود	drove	driven
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Definitions

تعريفات

steep	something which is difficult to climb	شديد الانحدار
journey	when you travel to get to a place	رحلة
repair	to fix something	يصلح
collapse	to fall down suddenly	ينهار

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

The bridge to school



The bridge after the storm

Lina lay awake, listening to the wind and rain. The storm lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up, she heard a crash. She ran to the window.

كانت لينا متيقظة وتستمع إلى الريح والمطر. استمرت العاصفة طوال الليل. ثم ، عندما طلعت الشمس، سمعت شيئًا يتحطم. ركضت إلى النافذة.

"What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah. Lina looked at the river near their house. "Oh no! she said. "The bridge has collapsed!" The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small, and had steep mountains all around it. The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to the town, with the school, stores, doctors, and sports center.

سألت أختها سارة "ماذا كان ذلك؟". نظرت لينا إلى النهر بالقرب من منزلهم. قالت"أوه لا! . "لقد انهار الجسر!" كانت القرية التي عاشت فيها لينا وسارة صغيرة، وكانت الجبال شديدة الانحدار في كل مكان حولها. كان الجسر فوق النهر أسرع طريقة للوصول إلى المدينة ، التي بها المدرسة والمتاجر والأطباء، والمركز الرياضي.

They ran to the kitchen to see their parents. "I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon. Then we can see what has happened." Eventually, the rain stopped, and Lina and her family walked to the river. Other people were there too.

ركضوا إلى المطبخ لرؤية والديهم. قالت أمي:" لقد استمعت للتو إلى الراديو. لقد قالوا إن العاصفة ستتوقف قريبا. وبعد ذلك يمكن أن نرى ما حدث." في نهاية المطاف ، توقف المطر ، مشت لينا وأسرتها نحو النهر. وكان هناك ناس آخرون أيضًا.

Study the rule. ادرس القاعدة.

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present Simple	Past Simple
He said, "I walk with my friends."	He said that he walked with his friends.
Present Continuous	Past Continuous
She said, "I'm going to school."	She said that she was going to school.
Present Perfect	Past Perfect
He said, "I have eaten pizza."	He said that he had eaten pizza.
(Modals) will - can - may	would - could - might
Ola said, "I can swim."	Ola said that she could swim.



Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lina said that the bus .... here!
   a) is b) was c) were d) are
2. Sara .... that my letter helped everybody.
   a) say b) ask c) said d) told
3. She said it was the only thing they .... do.
   a) can b) could c) will d) has
4. He said .... was going to school.
   a) he b) them c) us d) me

2 Correct the underlined word.

1. Lina said she <u>hear</u> a crash. (...................)
2. They said they <u>are</u> building a new bridge. (...................)
3. He <u>say</u> that he watched the match on TV. (...................)
4. Mona said that she <u>can</u> help. (...................)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lina got on a ....
   a) train b) bus c) car d) plane
2. Their life would be .... until someone repaired the bridge.
   a) happy b) same c) different d) difficult
3. The bridge was .... and that made her sad.
   a) broken b) new c) metal d) high
4. She often arrives at school ....
   a) late b) second c) first d) early

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Something that is difficult to climb is ....
   a) high b) steep c) deep d) long
2. If you fix something, you .... it.
   a) break b) paint c) recycle d) repair
3. The old building .... It fell down suddenly.
   a) collapsed b) crossed c) jumped d) clapped
4. When you travel, you go on a ....
   a) river b) journey c) lake d) picnic
5. My camera is broken. I need to .... it.
   a) make b) do c) repair d) paint
6. We couldn't climb the mountain because it was ....
   a) long b) short c) steep d) stair
7. There was a bridge .... the river.
   a) over b) under c) on d) in
8. Lina got .... the bus and went to school.
   a) at b) on c) of d) over
9. We can do our work ....
   a) online b) in line c) at line d) by line

10. Lina .... that she heard a crash.
    a) say   b) tell   c) asked   d) said
11. She said the bridge .... collapsed.
    a) has   b) had   c) have   d) is
12. Mom said she .... just listened to the radio.
    a) has   b) have   c) had   d) are
13. The teacher said he .... on a journey.
    a) go   b) goes   c) is going   d) was going
14. Lina said she .... late for school.
    a) is   b) would be   c) will be   d) were
15. Omar said that he was walking with .... friends.
    a) I   b) he   c) him   d) his

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lina lay awake, listening to the wind and rain. The storm lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up, she heard a crash. She ran to the window. "What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah. Lina looked at the river near their house. "Oh no! she said. "The bridge has collapsed!" The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small, and had steep mountains all around it. The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to the town, with the school, stores, doctors, and sports center. They ran to the kitchen to see their parents. "I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon. Then we can see what has happened." Eventually, the rain stopped, and Lina and her family walked to the river. Other people were there too. Lina's dad pointed to the broken bridge. He said that they couldn't go to town, or the school.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The underlined word "collapsed" means ....
    a) built   b) fell down   c) flew up   d) broke down
2. Mom was listening to the ....
    a) TV   b) radio   c) computer   d) cell phone

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How long did the storm last? ....
4. What was the effect of the broken bridge? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (6) WRITING AN OPINION

Vocabulary

المفردات

opinion	رأي	education	تعليم
trip	رحلة	title	عنوان
experiences	تجارب	introduction	مقدمة
real life	الحياة الواقعية	main ideas	الأفكار الرئيسية
important	هام - مهم	conclusion	خاتمة

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

learn about	يتعلم عن	do a project	يقوم بمشروع
(be) back	يعود	on a trip	في رحلة

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Title → **Are school trips important?** *by Nesma, aged 12*

Schoolchildren at the Egyptian Museum, Cairo

introduction → In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences.

Main ideas → First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better.

In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos.

Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

Conclusion → To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

How to write about your opinion.

كيف تكتب عن رأيك.

To give an opinion:

لكي تقدم رأيا:

1. Start the introduction with the phrase " In my opinion,..."

ابدأ المقدمة بعبارة "في رأيي،"

2. You need to give reasons.

أنت بحاجة لتقديم أسباب.

- In the main ideas paragraphs, give different reasons.

في فقرات الأفكار الرئيسية قدم أسبابًا مختلفة.

- Use these phrases:

استخدم هذه العبارات:

First of all, أولًا،
In addition, بالإضافة إلى ذلك،
Finally, وأخيرًا،

-Use commas after these adverb phrases.

استخدم فاصلة بعد العبارات الظرفية السابقة.

3. Start the conclusion with the phrase "To sum up, "

ابدأ الخاتمة بعبارة "وفي الختام، ..."

Read and learn.

اقرأ و تعلم.

In my opinion, all children should learn music at school.

First of all, I think playing music is a good way to relax.

In addition, learning music is a good way to be creative and use different parts of your brain.

Finally, learning an instrument teaches us good habits. We learn that we ha[ve] to practice to get great results!

To sum up, I think that we should learn more music in school.

Help your child write about his / her opinion.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن رأيه.

Write an opinion of (60 - 90) words about:

ICT is the most useful subject

- Use the opinion phrases.

In my opinion, ...

....

....

First of all ....

....

....

In addition, ...

....

....

Finally, ...

....

....

To sum up, ...

....

....

Lesson (7)

STORY: THE DOCTOR COMES TO SCHOOL

Key vocabulary مفردات رئيسية

palace	قصر	papyrus	ورق البردي
scribe	كاتب	scripts	مخطوطات
court	بلاط (ملكي)	sore	متورم - متقيح
confused	مرتبك / متحير	poisonous	سام
tablet	لوح (للكتابة)	herbs	أعشاب
amazed	مندهش	rolls	لفافات

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get up	ينهض	go into	يدخل
the pharaoh's court	بلاط الفرعون	jump up	يقفز
push away	يدفع بعيدًا	pick up	يلتقط
take out of	يُخرج من	put into	يضع داخل
pour onto	يصب على	pack up	يحزم (الأشياء)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
listen	يستمع	listened	listened
jump	يقفز	jumped	jumped
shout	يصيح	shouted	shouted
try	يحاول	tried	tried
push	يدفع	pushed	pushed
scream	يصرخ	screamed	screamed

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
get up	ينهض	got up	got up
leave	يغادر	left	left
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
know	يعرف	knew	known
bite	يعض	bit	bitten
take	يأخذ	took	taken
put	يضع	put	put
hurt	يؤلم	hurt	hurt

Definitions

تعريفات

tablet	in schools in Ancient Egypt, young children wrote on this.	لوح (للكتابة)
papyrus	a type of paper made from plants called reeds	ورق البردي
scribe	a person who wrote about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court	كاتب
court	place where the pharaoh made important decisions	بلاط (ملكي)
herbs	plants that people used in food or medicine	أعشاب
script	a piece of paper with information written on it	نص

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Nebsin didn't want to get up. The sun was bright, but his bed was comfortable. "Nebsin!" Dad called. "Time for school!" Nebsin went into the kitchen. His mom was making breakfast, and his brother was playing.

لم يرغب نيبسين في النهوض. كانت الشمس مشرقة ، لكن سريره كان مريحًا. نادى أبوه عليه. "حان وقت المدرسة!" ذهب نيبسين إلى المطبخ. كانت والدته تحضر الإفطار ، وكان شقيقه يلعب.

"Why do I have to go to school?" he said. "Babu plays all day. His life is easy!" "Babu will start school next year, when he is seven," said his mom. "I'm going to the **palace**, Nebsin," said Dad. "Let's walk together." They left the house. His father was a scribe, who spent all day writing about everything that happened in the pharaoh's **court**. "Did you like school, Dad?" asked Nebsin. "Of course! I wanted to learn to read and write, like you are doing." "Why did you want to be a scribe?" "My father was a scribe, and his father was a scribe. It's an important job. You will know what you want to be one day."

قال نيبسين "لماذا يجب أن أذهب إلى المدرسة؟ بابو يلعب طوال اليوم. حياته سهلة! قالت والدته: "سيبدأ بابو المدرسة العام المقبل ، عندما يكون في السابعة من عمره". قال أبي: "أنا ذاهب إلى القصر ، يا نيبسين دعنا نسير معًا. غادروا المنزل. كان والده كاتبًا ، يقضي طوال اليوم يكتب عن كل ما حدث في بلاط الفرعون. سأل نيبسين "هل تحب المدرسة، يا أبي؟". "بالطبع! أردت أن أتعلم القراءة والكتابة ، كما تفعل. سأله نيبسين "لماذا أردت أن تكون كاتبًا؟ قال الأب "كان والدي كاتبًا ، وكان والده كاتبًا. إنها وظيفة مهمة. سوف تعرف ما تريد أن تكون يومًا ما."

Nebsin was confused. He didn't know yet what job he wanted to do in the future. Later that morning, Nebsin was sitting on the floor, listening to the teacher and writing on his wooden **tablet**. Suddenly, a boy jumped up and started shouting. The teacher was shocked. "Sit down!" he said. "There's a snake!" somebody shouted.

كان نيبسين متحيرًا. لم يكن يعرف بعد الوظيفة التي يريد القيام بها في المستقبل. في وقت لاحق من ذلك الصباح ، كان نيبسين جالسًا على الأرض، يستمع إلى المعلم ويكتب على لوحه الخشبي. فجأة ، قفز صبي وبدأ في الصياح. صُدِم المعلم، وقال "اجلس!". صرخ أحدهم "هناك ثعبان!".

Everyone looked. A small, brown snake was moving across the classroom floor. The boy tried to push the snake away, but it **bit** his hand and he **screamed**. "Quick, Nebsin!" the teacher said. "Get the doctor. She'll know what to do." Nebsin and another boy ran to the doctor's building. She was sitting at a desk with rolls of **papyrus** on it. When they ran in, she was reading and writing notes. "Help, please! A snake bit our friend!" shouted Nebsin.

نظر الجميع. كان ثعبان بني صغير يتحرك عبر أرضية الفصل. حاول الصبي دفع الثعبان بعيدًا ، لكنه عض يده وصرخ المعلمُ قال. "بسرعة ، يا نيبسين!". "احضر الطبيبة. إنها سوف تعرف ما يجب القيام به"."ركض نبسين وصبي آخر إلى مبنى الطبيبة. كانت جالسة على مكتب عليه لفائف من ورق البردي. عندما دخلوا ، كانت تقرأ وتكتب الملاحظات. صاح نيبسين "ساعدينا، من فضلك! ثعبان عض صديقنا!".

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (7)

The doctor picked up her bag and some papyrus **scripts**. They ran to the school, where the boy was crying. His hand was red and sore. "Will he be OK, Doctor?" asked the teacher. "What kind of snake was it?" she asked, studying the boy's hand. "It was small, and brown, with dark circles," said Nebsin. The doctor looked at one of her papyrus rolls and said, "Good. That snake isn't **poisonous**."

التقطت الطبيبة حقيبتها وبعض مخطوطات البردي. ركضوا إلى المدرسة ، حيث كان الصبي يبكي. كانت يده حمراء ومتورمة. سأل المعلم "هل سيكون على ما يرام، أيتها الطبيبة؟". سألت وهي تفحص يد الصبي "أي نوع من الثعابين كان؟". قال نيبسين: "كان صغيرًا، وبُني، وذو دوائر داكنة". نظرت الطبيبة إلى إحدى لفائف ورق البردي وقالت: "جيد. هذا الثعبان ليس ساما."

She took some herbs out of her bag, put them into a bottle of oil, and **shook**it. She poured this onto a cloth. "Keep this on the bite," the doctor said. "It will hurt for a while, but you won't get sick." Nebsin was amazed. He watched as the doctor packed up her papyrus scripts and her bag. "Excuse me. How did you learn to be a doctor?" he asked. "It takes a long time!" said the doctor. "If you want to be a doctor, you should work hard here at school!"

أخرجت بعض الأعشاب من حقيبتها ، ووضعتها في زجاجة زيت ، ورجتها. سكبت هذا على قطعة قماش. قالت الطبيبة: "احتفظ بهذا على اللدغة". "إنها سوف تؤلم لفترة من الوقت ، لكنك لن تمرض." كان نبسين مندهشًا. شاهد الطبيبة وهي تحزم مخطوطاتها البردية وحقيبتها. "قال نيبسين: عفوًا وسألها "كيف تعلمتي أن تكوني طبيبة؟". قالت الطبيبة "يستغرق وقتا طويلا!". "إذا كنت تريد أن تصبح طبيبًا، يجب أن تعمل بجد هنا في المدرسة!"



Answer the following questions.

1. What does the snake look like?

....

2. What does the doctor put on the bite?

....

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. "There's a .... !" somebody shouted
   a) crocodile b) lizard c) snake d) bear
2. A small .... snake was moving
   a) yellow b) black c) orange d) brown
3. The boy tried to push the snake ....
   a) down b) away c) up d) across
4. The snake bit his ....
   a) hand b) leg c) finger d) toe

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did the doctor take out of her bag?

....

2. How was Nebsin?

....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

snake - papyrus - building - doctor - wood

"Quick, Nebsin!" the teacher said. "Get the 1)................................ She'll know what to do." Nebsin and another boy ran to the doctor's 2)..................... She was sitting at a desk with rolls of 3)..................... on it. When they ran in, she was reading and writing notes. "Help, please! A 4)................. bit our friend!"

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The pharaoh lives in a ....
   a) home b) house c) palace d) tent
2. A scribe wrote everything that happened in the pharaoh's ....
   a) class b) school c) hospital d) court

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. Children in Ancient Egypt wrote on a wooden ....

a) tablet b) wall c) brick d) paper

4. Some snakes are ....

a) good b) safe c) poisonous d) beautiful

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. dad - job - Nebsin's - important - has - an - .

....

2. like - snake - What - look - does - the - ?

....

3. the - going - I'm - palace - to - .

....

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nebsin didn't want to get up. The sun was bright, but his bed was comfortable. "Nebsin!" Dad called. "Time for school!" Nebsin went into the kitchen. His mom was making breakfast, and his brother was playing.
"Why do I have to go to school?" he said. "Babu plays all day. His life is easy!"
"Babu will start school next year, when he is seven," said his mom.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It was time for Nebsin to ....

a) make breakfast b) get out c) go to school d) play

2. His bed was ....

a) uncomfortable b) hard c) comfortable d) tiring

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What was his mother doing? ....

4. Who plays all day? ....

Writing Corner

Classrooms on the roof

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school! The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green roofs for schools in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air. That means that they are great for the environment. The project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden. They learn about which plants grow well in the hot, dry weather.

The importance of school trips

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences.

First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better.In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

The importance of learning music

In my opinion, music is very interesting and relaxing.

First of all, all children should learn music at school. I think playing music is a good way to relax. In addition learning music is a good way to be creative and use different parts of your brain. Finally learning an instrument teaches us good habits. We learn that we have to practice to get great results!

To sum up, I think that we should learn more music at school.

Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك ان يكتب فقرات.

Review on Unit (3)

School

math	رياضيات	boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
break	فسحة	cafeteria	كافيتريا
demonstration	عرض توضيحي	reindeer	حيوان الرنّة (الأيل)
flexible	مَرِن	green roofs	أسطح خضراء
timetable	جدول	ICT	تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات
uniform	زيّ موحد	mobile	متنقل - متحرك
neat	أنيق	nomadic	بدوي / رُحَّل
sleds	زلاجات	subjects	مواد دراسية

Stories

bite	يعض	challenge	يتحدى
collapsed	إنهار	court	بلاط (ملكي)
herbs	أعشاب	journey	رحلة
palace	قصر	papyrus	ورق البردي
poisonous	سام	scream	يصرخ
scribe	كاتب	scripts	مخطوطات
shook	هز - رج	tablet	لوح كتابة

Language

Adverbs of frequency

always	دائمًا	usually	عادةً	often	غالبًا
sometimes	أحيانًا	never	أبدًا		

- تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي.

e.g. She often walks to school.

- تأتي ظروف التكرار بعد (Verb to be).

e.g. I am never late for school.

e.g. How often do you play tennis?

I sometimes play tennis.

Help your child revise unit (3).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.

Reported Speech

الكلام غير المباشر

- We use reported speech to report what someone said.

خدم الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر) لنقل ما قاله شخص ما.

How to report speech.

Mom said , " I have just listened to the radio."

Mom said that she had just listened to the radio.

نستخدم الفعل (said) لنقل كلام الشخص.

نحذف علامات التنصيص "   " ونستخدم (that) بدلًا منها، ويمكن عدم استخدامها.

نغير الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب.

I → he / she

me → him / her

my → his / her

we → they

نغير زمن الفعل من المضارع إلى الماضي.

Examples:

Laila said, "The bridge has collapsed."

Laila said that the bridge had collapsed.

He said, "We heard about your letter."

He said that they had heard about my letter.

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present Simple	Past Simple
He said, "I walk with my friends."	He said that he walked with his friends
Present Continuous	Past Continuous
She said, "I'm going to school."	She said that she was going to school.
Present Perfect	Past Perfect
He said, "I have eaten pizza."	He said that he had eaten pizza.
(Modals) will - can - may	would - could - might
Ola said, "I can swim."	Ola said that she could swim.

Dictation on Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

زلاجات	....	أسطح خضراء	....
مرن	....	بدوي - رَحّل	....
مدرسة داخلية	....	متنقل - متحرك	....

Lesson (2)

أنيق	....	زيّ موحد	....
تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات	....	كافيتيريا	....
جاف	....	يلتقط	....

Lesson (3)

نادي الطهي	....	نادي السباحة	....
نادي كرة القدم	....	نادي الموسيقى	....
مسرحيات حزينة	....	ينضم إلى	....

Lesson (4)

ألواح شمسية	....	اليوم المفتوح	....
ملعب بيئي	....	عرض توضيحي	....
متحمس - شغوف	....	مدير المدرسة	....

Lesson (5)

يصلح	....	جسر - كوبري	....
رحلة	....	ينهار	....
جسر معدني	....	شديد الانحدار	....

Lesson (6)

خاتمة	....	رأي	....
تجارب	....	عنوان	....
الحياة الواقعية	....	مقدمة	....

Lesson (7)

متورم - متقيّح	....	قصر	....
مرتبك - متحير	....	لفافات	....
سام	....	بلاط (ملكي)	....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (3)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lilly is from ....

a) France b) America c) Egypt d) Germany

2. She started school when she was ....

a) five b) six c) seven d) eight

3. She likes using ....

a) cameras b) mobiles c) computers d) tablets

4. She is in Grade ....

a) 4 b) 5 c) 6 d) 7

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where do some classes have their lessons?

....

2. What are green roofs?

....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

lunch - neat - cafeteria - dirty - uniform

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school 1) .... , but my clothes and shoes have to be 2) .... School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when i[t is] dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an ho[ur] for lunch, and I usually bring 3) .... from home. I eat in the 4) .... , or outside in summer.

Help your child deal with such questions.

... طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The Shagara at School project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden. They learn about which plants grow well in the hot, dry weather. In 2017, classes at one school started going to their green roofs for lessons. People at the project thought this was an amazing idea! In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the shade, but there are no walls. Students and teachers have space and can see the flowers and plants. The Shagara at School Project says roof gardens can help students in many city schools. Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy – and that is great for learning.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The project teaches students and ....

   a) vets b) teachers c) pilots d) divers

2. They learn about which plants grow well in the .... , dry weather.

   a) cold b) cool c) hot d) cloudy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What makes us calm and healthy?

....

4. Where do students sit?

....

5 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Asser and Mayar went to their grandma's house. ( )
2. Asser was angry about the concert. ( )
3. Asser wanted his parents to hear him sing and play football. ( )
4. Asser practiced his song. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Asser and Shady had fun in the ....

2. Asser and Shady drank some .... and ate some fruit.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I don't have a bike. I .... cycle to school.
   a) always b) often c) never d) sometimes
2. My friends make me ....
   a) happily b) calmly c) happy d) noisily
3. Running makes me .... healthy.
   a) feel b) feels c) felt d) feeling
4. Lina said .... the bridge had collapsed.
   a) this b) these c) that d) those

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Lina - What - did - hear - ?

....

2. plays - unhappy - Sad - make me - .

....

8 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Tennis

Guiding words:

(sport - great - healthy - classes - club)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Unit 4
We can mak
a differenc
In this unit, the student will ...
في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...
• describe himself and his friends.
يصف نفسه و أصدقاءه.
• understand and use reported questions.
يفهم ويستخدم الأسئلة في غير المباشر.
• listen to and give opinions.
يستمع إلى ويبدي الآراء.
• understand and use noun suffixes.
يفهم ويستخدم اللواحق الاسمية.
• understand and use the superlative form of adjectives.
يفهم ويستخدم صفات التفضيل.
• read and understand a play.
يقرأ ويفهم مسرحية.
• take part in a play.
يشارك في مسرحية.
• write a detailed personal profile.
يكتب ملف تعريف شخصي مفصل.
• read and understand a story.
يقرأ ويفهم قصة.

Lesson (1) WHY WE'RE ALL SPECIAL

Key vocabulary

مفردات رئيسية



braces
دعائم تقويم الأسنان

glasses
نظارات



hearing aid
جهاز تقوية السمع



curly hair
شعر مجعد



wheelchair
كرسي متحرك



straight hair
شعر ناعم

Extra vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

special	مميز	unkind = mean	قاس / غير لطيف
different	مختلف	actually	في الواقع
the same	متشابهين / نفس الشيء	boring	ممل
else	آخر	drama	التمثيل
language classes	حصص اللغات	creative	مبدع
sporty	رياضي		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي - يضع	wore	worn
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
agree	يوافق	agreed	agreed
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgetten

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

different to each other	مختلفين عن بعضنا	a bit boring	ممل قليلًا
wear braces	يضع دعائم تقويم الأسنان	look after	يعتني بـ
help with + noun	يساعد في	unkind to	قاسي مع
the best at + noun / v-ing	الأفضل في	the other day	بالأمس - ذات اليوم

Read and learn

Aid	Used
glasses	because he can't see well
braces	to help her teeth get straight
wheelchair	because she can't walk well
hearing aid	because she has problems with hearing

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Why we're all special by Reem


Mrs Mona teaching our class

Today, our teacher, Mrs Mona, asked us, "How are we different to each other?" That's an easy question to answer! Asser is very tall. He's taller than everyone else in the class. I'm very short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is very straight, and he wears **glasses**. Injy wears **braces** to help her teeth get straight. Amal uses a **wheelchair** because she cannot walk well. Amina has a **hearing aid** because she has problems hearing.

اليوم، معلمتنا، السيدة منى، سألتنا، "كيف نحن مختلفون عن بعضنا البعض؟"هذا سؤال سهل الإجابة عليه! آسر طويل جدًا. إنه أطول من أي شخص آخر في الفصل. أنا قصيرة جدًا. لدي عيون خضراء وآسر لديه عيون بنية. شعر سليم مجعد ، لكن شعر وليد ناعم جدًا، وهو يرتدي نظارة. تضع إنجي دعامات لمساعدة أسنانها على الاستقامة. تستخدم أمل كرسيا متحركا لأنها لا تستطيع المشي جيدا. أمينة لديها جهاز السمع لأنها تعاني من مشاكل في السمع.

We have different families, too – I have three sisters, but my best friend Amal has two brothers! My friend Dalia loves sports, but I prefer language classes.

لدينا عائلات مختلفة أيضًا - لدي ثلاث شقيقات ، لكن أفضل صديقة لي أمل لديها شقيقان! صديقتي داليا تحب الرياضة ، لكني أفضل دروس اللغات.

Then, Mrs Mona asked us to tell our friends about something that makes them special. I told Amal I love her curly hair and the way she helps me with math – she's the best at math in the class! And Amal told me she loves the way I make her laugh when she's feeling a bit sad. Mrs Mona said, "Imagine a world where we're all the same. What would it be like?" "Actually," said Sherif, "I think it would be a bit boring." "Yes," said Sally, "it would be really boring."

ثم طلبت منا السيدة منى أن نخبر أصدقائنا عن شيء يجعلهم مميزين. اخبرت أمل أنني أحب شعرها المجعد والطريقة التي تساعدني بها في الرياضيات - إنها الأفضل في الرياضيات في الفصل! وأخبرتني أمل أنها تحب الطريقة التي أضحكها بها عندما تشعر بالحزن قليلا. قالت السيدة منى، " تخيلوا عالمًا حيث نحن جميعًا متشابهون. ماذا سيكون شكله؟" قال شريف: "في الواقع ، أعتقد أنه سيكون مملًا بعض الشيء. قالت سالي: "نعم ، سيكون الأمر مملًا حقًا."

"And imagine if everyone was good at the same things?" said Mrs Mona. "Well, then it wouldn't be very exciting," I said. "It's good that everyone is different," said Mrs Mona. "We don't look the same because our families are different. Some of us are tall, some short, some have curly hair, and some have straight hair. Some of us have two brothers and sisters, and others have three. Some of us are good at music, and others are good at sports." Everyone agreed.

قالت السيدة منى"وتخيلوا لو كان الجميع جيدين في نفس الأشياء؟". قلت:" حسنًا ، لن يكون الأمر مثيرًا للغاية". قالت السيدة منى:" من الجيد أن يكون الجميع مختلفين". "نحن لا نبدو متشابهين لأن عائلاتنا مختلفة. البعض منا طويل القامة ، والبعض قصير ، والبعض لديه شعر مجعد ، والبعض لديه شعر ناعم. البعض منا لديه اثنان من الأخوة أو الأخوات، والبعض الآخر لديه ثلاثة. البعض منا جيد في الموسيقى، والبعض الآخر جيد في الرياضة." وافق الجميع.

"The important thing is that we look after each other in our classroom. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. Our school is for everyone – we are all equally important," said Mrs Mona. "But what should we do if we see someone being mean at school?" asked Injy. "I saw someone being unkind to Tarek the other day because he forgot his glasses, and so he couldn't see well." "You should always come and see me, or another teacher," said Mrs Mona. "Here at school we should all help each other."

"الشيء المهم هو أننا نعتني ببعضنا البعض في فصلنا الدراسي. لا ينبغي أن يكون الناس قاسيين مع شخص ما لأنه مختلف. قالت السيدة منى:" المدرسة للجميع – نحن جميعًا على نفس القدر من الأهمية". سألت إنجي "ولكن ماذا يجب أن نفعل إذا رأينا شخصا قاسيًا في المدرسة؟". "رأيت شخص غير عطوف مع طارق أول أمس لأنه نسي نظارته ، ولذلك لم يستطع أن يرى جيدا. قالت السيدة منى:" يجب أن تأتي دائمًا وتخبريني أو تخبري مدرسًا آخر". "هنا في المدرسة يجب أن نساعد بعضنا البعض."

Read again and write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences in your notebook

1. Reem told her friend Amal that she loves making her laugh. [ ]
2. The students said that the world would be fun if we were all the same. [ ]
3. Injy asked about what to do if someone is unkind. [ ]
4. Mrs Mona said that if someone is unkind, the students shouldn't tell her. [ ]

Read the paragraph and write the children's names.



These are my friends at school. Shady is tall and wears glasses. He's very creative and likes drawing. Laila is very kind – she helps everybody. She has straight hair. She can't hear very well, so she wears a hearing aid. Amira loves drama and has curly dark hair. She also loves reading and always has books in her hands. Hesham is very sporty, and he's in the wheelchair basketball team. Seleem is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces.

هؤلاء أصدقائي في المدرسة. شادي طويل القامة ويرتدي نظارات. إنه مبدع جدًا ويحب الرسم. ليلى لطيفة جدًا - إنها تساعد الجميع. لديها شعر ناعم. لا تستطيع أن تسمع جيدا ، لذا فهي ترتدي جهاز تقوية السمع. أميرة تحب الدراما ولها شعر داكن مجعد. كما أنها تحب القراءة ولديها دائمًا كتب في يديها. هشام رياضي للغاية ، وهو في فريق كرة السلة على الكراسي المتحركة. سليم رائع في الرياضيات. لديه شعر قصير ويرتدي دعائم تقويم الأسنان.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Asser is very ....
   a) short b) long c) tall d) old
2. Seleem has .... hair.
   a) straight b) long c) curly d) black
3. .... wears glasses.
   a) Asser b) Waleed c) Seleem d) Huda
4. .... help teeth get straight.
   a) Glasses b) Wheelchair c) Braces d) Hearing aids

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why does Amina have a hearing aid?

....

2. How many sisters does Amal have?

....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

same - different - curly - straight - glasses

We are all 1).................... . It's a good thing. Imagine if everyone was good at the 2).................... things. Some of us have 3).................... hair and some have straight hair. My friend Omar is tall and wears 4).................... . He's very creative and likes drawing.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - and - glasses - wears - Shady - tall - .

....

2. wears - teeth - braces - Injy - help - to - her - straight - get - .

....

3. are - different - each - How - we - other - to - ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

All people are different, but they are all important. Some people are short and some are tall. My friend Amal uses a wheelchair because she can't walk well. Amina has a hearing aid because she has problems with hearing. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. Our school is for everyone – we are all equally important," said Mrs Mona. "But what should we do if we see someone being **mean** at school?" asked Injy. "I saw someone being unkind to Tarek the other day because he forgot his glasses, and so he couldn't see well." "You should always come and tell me, or another teacher," said Mrs Mona. "Here at school we should all help each other."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "mean" means ....
   a) kind b) good c) unkind d) nice
2. Amal uses a .... because she can't walk.
   a) car b) wheelchair c) bike d) wheel

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What happened when Tarek forgot his glasses?

....

4. What should you do when you see someone unkind to others?

....

6 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Describe your friends

Guiding words:
(school - tall - braces - curly- wheelchair - reading- drawing)

....

....

....

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

مفردات رئيسية

disability	إعاقة	expressions	تعبيرات
difficulties	صعوبات	messages	رسائل
sounds	أصوات	lip-reading	قراءة الشفاه
noise	ضوضاء	sign language	لغة الإشارة
loud	عالي	hand spelling	التهجي باليد
quiet	هادئ	forehead	الجبهة
meowing	مواء (صوت القطة)	chin	الذقن

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have hearing difficulties	لديه صعوبات في السمع	(be) called	يُسمى - يُدعى
communicate **with**	يتواصل مع		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	communicated
invite	يدعو	invited	invited
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
guess	يخمن	guessed	guessed
press	يضغط	pressed	pressed

Language Notes

hear + مفعول + v-ing

- I heard our cat **meowing**.

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Today, our teacher invited an interesting person called Mr Kamal to come and talk to us in class. Mr Kamal told us about the best ways to communicate with people who have hearing difficulties.

اليوم، دعا معلمنا شخصا مثيرًا للاهتمام يدعى السيد كمال للحضور والتحدث إلينا في الفصل. أخبرنا السيد كمال عن أفضل الطرق للتواصل مع الأشخاص الذين يعانون من صعوبات في السمع.

First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking, and I said I heard our cat meowing in the morning!

أولًا، سألنا عن الأصوات التي نسمعها كل يوم. كان لدينا الكثير من الأفكار. وقال صديقي آدم إنه يسمع أشخاصًا آخرين يتحدثون ، وقلت أسمع قطتنا تموء في الصباح!

Then, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear loud noises. Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises.

ثم، سأل السيد كمال عن ما الذي سيحدث في رأينا إذا لم نتمكن من السماع جيدًا. حقًا جعلنا نفكر! سأل آدم إذا كنا سنكون قادرين فقط على سماع ضوضاء عالية. قال السيد كمال إنه محق. من الصعب سماع الأصوات الهادئة.

Next, Mr Kamal asked us what ways we communicate with each other. We thought there were lots of ways. I said that talking was a way of communicating. Adam said that using expressions, like smiling, was another. Younis said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate.

بعد ذلك، سألنا السيد كمال عن الطرق التي نتواصل بها مع بعضنا البعض. كنا نظن أن هناك الكثير من الطرق. قلت إن الحديث وسيلة للتواصل. قال آدم إن استخدام التعبيرات، مثل الابتسام ، وسيلة أخرى. قال يونس إن كتابة الرسائل على هاتفه طريقته المفضلة للتواصل.

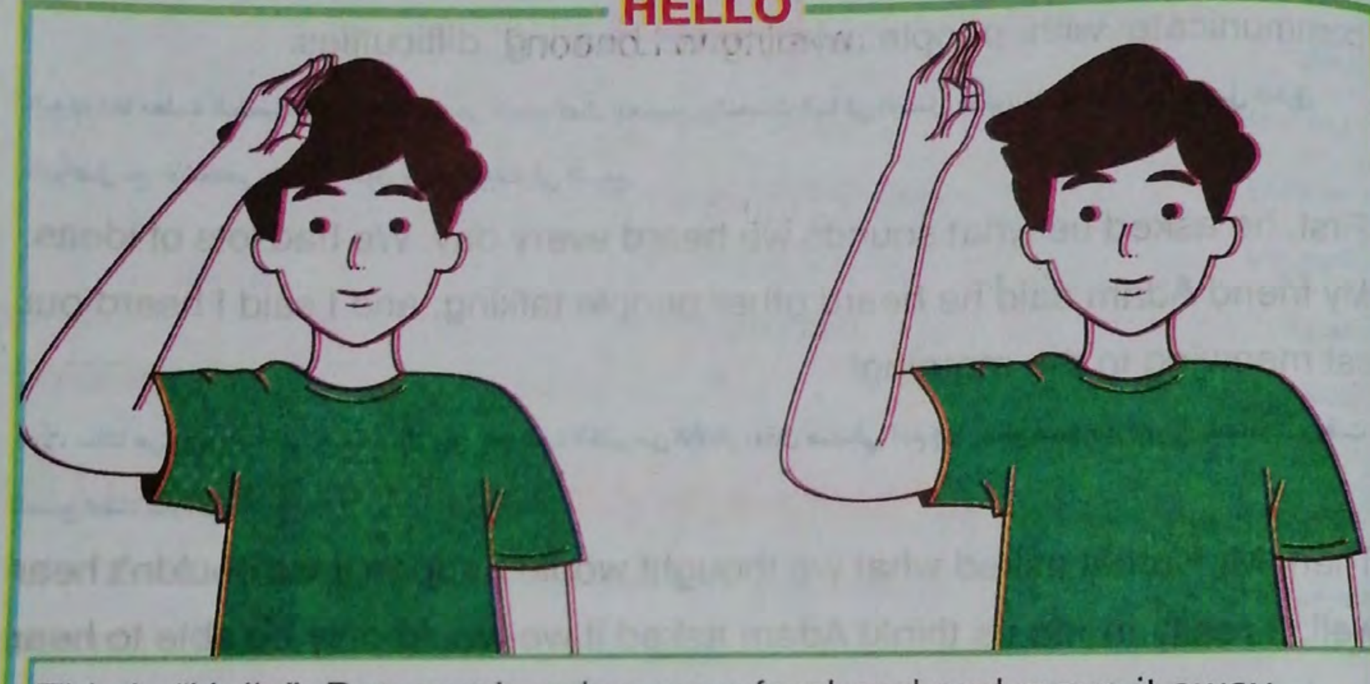
Then, Mr Kamal told us about a really clever way to communicate! Can you guess what it is?

ثم أخبرنا السيد كمال عن طريقة ذكية حقًا للتواصل! هل يمكنك أن تخمن ما هي؟

Look and learn some American Sign Language.

انظر وتعلم بعض لغة الإشارة الأمريكية.

HELLO



This is "Hello". Put your hand on your forehead and move it away.

هذه كلمة "مرحبًا". ضع يدك على جبهتك وحركها بعيدًا.

THANK YOU



This is "Thank you". Press your hand on your chin and move it away.

هذه كلمة "شكرًا". اضغط يدك على ذقنك ثم حركها بعيدًا.

Language

Reported Questions

الأسئلة غير المباشرة

"How are you traveling to London?"

He asked me how I was traveling to London

"Can you drive a car?"

He asked me if I could drive a car

Steps:

1. We use the verb "asked".
   نستخدم الفعل (asked).
2. When it's a Yes/No question, we use if instead of the quotation marks.
   إذا كان السؤال بـ "هل"، نستخدم (if) كرابط بدلًا من علامات التنصيص.
3. When it's a wh-question, we use the same question word.
   إذا كان السؤال بأداة استفهام، نستخدم نفس كلمة الاستفهام.
4. We change the tense from present to past.
   نحول الزمن من المضارع إلى الماضي.
5. We change the word order, start with the subject, then the verb. Remove the word (do).
   نغير ترتيب الكلمات، نبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل. أحذف كلمة (do)
6. We omit "?" and put a full stop.
   نحذف علامة الاستفهام، ونضع نقطة.

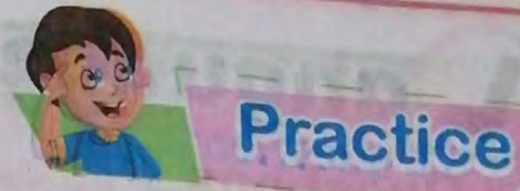
Examples:

"Do you hear lots of sounds outside?"

He asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside.

"What sounds do you hear every day?"

He asked us what sounds we heard every day.



1 Read and choose:

1. "What happens if you can't hear quiet noises?"
   She asked **what happened / what happens** if we couldn't hear quiet noises.
2. "Can you all see the whiteboard?"
   He asked **we could / if we could** all see the whiteboard.
3. "How do you communicate at school?"
   She asked **how we communicated / if we communicate** at school.
4. "Do you know how to use sign language?"
   He asked **did I know / if I knew** how to use sign language.

2 Correct the underlined words.

1. Mr Kamal asked what <u>thought we</u> would happen if we couldn't hear well. (..................)
2. He <u>said</u> why we were running. (..................)
3. I asked him where he <u>live</u>. (..................)
4. She asked me if <u>did I see</u> Kamal. (..................)
5. They asked me if I <u>can</u> swim. (..................)
6. He asked <u>I</u> if I lived in Cairo. (..................)
7. Sara asked what time it <u>is</u>. (..................)
8. He asked us if we <u>do</u> our homework. (..................)

 Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who did the teacher invite?

....

2. Did he talk about people with eye problems?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

sign - meowing - talking - communicate - signal

Mr. Kamal: Hello, everyone. What sounds do you hear every day?

Adam: I hear some people 1) ....

Omar: I hear some cats 2) ....

Mr. Kamal: What ways do we use to 3) .... with people with hearing difficulties?

Adam: We can use 4) .... language and lip-reading.

Mr. Kamal: That's right. Thank you.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He asked us .... we heard lots of sounds outside.
   a) to b) if c) at d) that
2. She .... where he lived.
   a) said b) told c) asked d) asks
3. The teacher asked us if .... use sign language.
   a) can we b) we could c) we can d) could we
4. Mom asked me what time .... my homework.
   a) I do b) do I do c) I did d) did I
5. He asked me if .... with my family.
   a) I live b) do I live c) did I live d) I lived

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6. Dad asked me .... Spanish.

a) do you speak b) did I speak c) if I spoke d) I spoke

7. Adam asked me how ....

a) I am b) I was c) are you d) were you

8. Omar asked me where .... worked

a) did you b) do you c) I did d) I

9. He asked .... all see the whiteboard

a) we could b) we can c) if we could d) what we can

10. I .... Omar where he played football

a) said b) told c) asked d) talked

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Today, our teacher invited an interesting person called Mr Kamal to come and talk to us in class. Mr Kamal told us about the best ways to communicate with people who have hearing difficulties. First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking, and I said I heard our cat meowing in the morning! Then, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear loud noises. Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mr Kamal is a/an .... person

a) kind b) interested c) interesting d) bad

2. It's not .... to hear quiet noises

a) easy b) difficult c) kind d) nice

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the text about?

....

4. What's the sound of cats?

....

 Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) AMAZING DAVID!

Key vocabulary
مفردات رئيسية

prosthetic arm
ذراع صناعية

movable elbow
كوع متحرك

David Aguilar Amphoux

Extra vocabulary
مفردات إضافية

disability	إعاقة	interesting	ممتع - مثير للاهتمام
amazing	مذهل - مدهش	comic books	كتب مصورة
metal	معدن	animation	رسوم متحركة
expensive	غالي	boring	ممل
message	رسالة	Venn diagram	مخطط فن
opinion	رأي	fast	سريع
facts	حقائق	the same	نفس الشيء
plans	خطط	chess	شطرنج
future	مستقبل	taekwondo	تايكوندو (رياضة)

Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

made **of**	مصنوع من	**in** my opinion	في رأيي
what do you think **about** ...?	ما رأيك في..؟	make animation	يقوم بعمل رسوم متحركة
good **at**	جيد في	a bit boring	ممل قليلاً

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Language Functions

Asking about opinions السؤال عن الرأي

What do you think about ...? ما رأيك في....؟	What is your opinion of ...? ما رأيك في....؟

Expressing opinions التعبير عن الرأي

In my opinion,... في رأيي،...	I think... أعتقد	To me, ... بالنسبة لي،...

Opinions about David Aguilar

What do you think about David?

In my opinion, he's very clever.



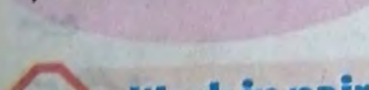


I think David's family is interesting. What do you think?

To me, they are very interesting, too.

What about his plans for the future?

I think that his plans to help others are fantastic.



Work in pairs. Choose a topic and discuss.

- playing video games
- reading comic books
- playing football
- drawing and painting
- making animations



What do you think about playing football?

Well, in my opinion, football is a bit boring. I love volleyball – it's really fast!



Help your child ask about and give opinions.

ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويعطي رأيه.

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. David Aguilar has a .... arm.
   a) short b) long c) prosthetic d) normal
2. David's prosthetic arm is made of ....
   a) paper b) metal c) glass d) wool
3. Most prosthetic arms are ....
   a) expensive b) cheap c) inexpensive d) easy
4. A disability .... stop you.
   a) should b) must c) ought to d) shouldn't

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What are both Omar and Basel good at? ....
2. Is Omar good at drawing cartoons? ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

interesting - boring - too - opinion - think

A: What do you 1) .... about David?.

B: In my 2) ...., he is very clever.

A: I think David's family is 3) .... What do you think?

B: To me, they are very interesting 4) ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. David has a disability. He has a .... arm.
   a) prosthetic b) normal c) healthy d) good
2. David's arm is made .... metal.
   a) in b) at c) off d) of
3. This car is .... It costs 300 thousand pounds.
   a) easy b) cheap c) expensive d) inexpensive

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

4. This elbow is .... It can change directions.
   a) still   b) movable   c) stopping   d) steady
5. Rana is good .... playing taekwondo.
   a) at   b) in   c) on   d) of
6. I enjoyed this book. It is ....
   a) boring   b) bad   c) interesting   d) terrible

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. think - football - about - What - you - do - ?
   ....
2. plans - future - What - for - your - the - are - ?
   ....
3. expensive - Most - arms - prosthetic - are - .
   ....
4. A disability - stop - you - shouldn't - .
   ....

6 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Prosthetic arms

Guiding words:

(disability - prosthetic arms - metal - expensive - stop)

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson (4) CAN I WORK WITH YOU?

Key vocabulary مفردات رئيسية

advertisement	إعلان	kindness	عطف / طيبة
information	معلومات	tropical rainforests	غابات استوائية
character	شخصية	improve	يحسن

Extra vocabulary مفردات إضافية

poster	ملصق	grade	مرحلة - صف دراسي	proud	فخور
colorful	ملون	actions	أحداث	advice	نصيحة
dear	عزيزي	excellent	ممتاز	design	تصميم - يصمم
line	كلمات دور الممثل	real	حقيقي	emotions	عواطف
research	يقوم بعمل بحث	lovely	جميل		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
act	يمثل	acted	acted
talk	يتحدث	talked	talked
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
give	يعطي	gave	given
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get into	يدخل في	talk to	يتحدث إلى
work with	يعمل مع	good at	جيد في
at the end	في النهاية	work hard	يعمل بجد
move around	يتجول	look proud	يبدو فخورًا

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

A poster about animals


Grade 6 children working on a poster

Mrs Randa : OK, everyone, I want you to get into groups to make posters about animals that live in tropical rainforests. It should be an advertisement for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting information. You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget – kindness is important.

حسنًا ، أريدكم جميعًا أن تنضموا إلى مجموعات لعمل ملصقات عن الحيوانات التي تعيش في الغابات الاستوائية المطيرة. يجب أن يكون إعلانًا عن الغابة المطيرة. أود ملصقات ملونة بها الكثير من المعلومات المثيرة للاهتمام. يمكنكم تكوين مجموعاتكم الآن. أود أن يعمل الجميع معًا ولا تنسوا - اللطف مهم.

Fares : Tamer, Gameela, Wael, can I work with you?

تامر، جميلة، وائل، هل يمكنني العمل معكم؟

Tamer : Oh no, sorry. We're already working with Magdy. Magdy, come here!

أوه لا ، آسفون. نحن نعمل بالفعل مع مجدي. مجدي ، تعال هنا!

Magdy : I'm coming!

أنا قادم!

Fares : Sherif and Lamar, can I work with you?

شريف ولمار، هل يمكنني العمل معكم؟

Sherif : Er no, we're working with Fareeda.

Fares starts to feel a bit sad and goes to talk to Mrs Randa.

إيه لا ، نحن نعمل مع فريدة.

يبدأ فارس في الشعور بالحزن قليلًا ويذهب للتحدث إلى السيدة راندا.

Fares : I can't find a group to work with, Mrs Randa. Everyone has their group.

لا أستطيع العثور على مجموعة للعمل معها ، يا سيدة رندا. كل شخص لديه مجموعته.

Mrs Randa : Oh dear! Of course we can find you someone. Let's go and talk to Amira. Amira, who are you working with in your group?

يا عزيزي! بالطبع يمكننا أن نجد لك شخصًا ما. دعنا نذهب ونتحدث إلى أميرة. أميرة، مع من تعملين في مجموعتك؟

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Amira : I'm working with Samer and Mariam, but we need someone else.
أنا أعمل مع سامر ومريم ، لكننا بحاجة إلى شخص آخر.

Mrs Randa : Excellent! Here's Fares!
ممتاز! هذا فارس!

Amira : Hi, Fares! What would you like to do for the poster?
أهلًا، فارس! ماذا تُحب أن تعمل للملصق؟

Fares : I'd love to draw the pictures!
أحب أن أرسم الصور!

Amira : That's fantastic! I'm good at writing, Samer is good at design, and Mariam is great at researching information and finding photos. If you can draw pictures, then we will make a very good team!
هذا رائع! أنا جيد في الكتابة ، سامر جيد في التصميم ، ومريم رائعة في البحث عن المعلومات والعثور على الصور. إذا كنت تستطيع رسم الصور ، فإننا سوف نكوّن فريق جيد جدًا!

A little later...
بعد قليل...

Mrs Randa : These posters are beautiful. Who did these lovely pictures?
هذه الملصقات جميلة. من قام بهذه الصور الجميلة؟

Samer : That was Fares, Mrs Randa - he really worked hard to make our poster.
إنه فارس، يا أستاذة راندا - لقد عمل بجد حقًا لصنع ملصقنا.

Fares smiles and looks very proud.
يبتسم فارس ويبدو فخورًا جدًا.



Read again. Ask and answer with a partner.

1. What does Mrs Randa want her students to do?

....

2. Why is it difficult for Fares to find a group?

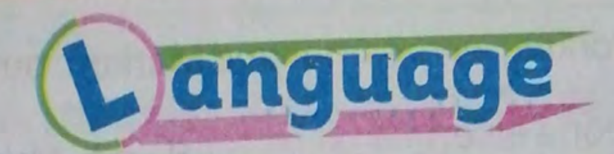
....

3. What does Fares want to do for the poster?

....

4. Why does Amira say her team will be good?

....



Noun suffixes لواحق الأسماء

- Suffixes are a group of letters that are added at the end of word.

اللواحق هي مجموعة حروف تُضاف إلى آخر الكلمة.

- Suffixes like ment, ness and ation can change a word into a noun.

لواحق مثل ment ، ness ، ation يمكن أن تحول الكلمة إلى اسم.

Word		Noun	
agree	يوافق	agreement	اتفاق
entertain	يسلي	entertainment	تسلية
advertise	يعلن	advertisement	إعلان
happy	سعيد	happiness	سعادة
ill	مريض	illness	مرض
inform	يبلغ - يُعلم	information	معلومات
transport	ينقل	transportation	مواصلات
relax	يسترخي	relaxation	استرخاء

Examples:

- Ali is happy.
- I can find happiness with my friends.
- I want someone to entertain me.
- We need some entertainment.

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The children are in grade ....
   a) four b) five c) three d) six
2. The children are working on a/an ....
   a) article b) poster c) diary d) magazine
3. The posters are about animals in ....
   a) rivers b) mountains c) rainforests d) oceans
4. Mrs Randa wants a lot of .... information.
   a) boring b) interesting c) terrible d) bad

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What would Fares like to do for the poster? ....
2. What is Amira good at? ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

has - is - group - else - working

Fares: I can't find a 1) .... to work with, Mrs Randa. Everyone 2) .... their group.

Mrs Randa: Oh dear! Of course we can find you someone. Let's go and talk to Amira. Amira, who are you 3) .... with in you group?

Amira: I'm working with Samer and Mariam, but we need someone 4) ....

Mrs Randa: Excellent! Here's Fares!

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Monkeys live in tropical ....
   a) rivers b) rainforests c) lakes d) seas
2. Amira is good .... writing.
   a) at b) on c) in d) with
3. The posters are beautiful. Who did these .... pictures?
   a) boring b) lovely c) bad d) terrible

4. The students worked hard. They look very ....
   a) sad   b) bad   c) angry   d) proud
5. Mariam is great at .... information.
   a) designing   b) looking   c) researching   d) mopping
6. .... is very important.
   a) Kindness   b) Kind   c) Happy   d) Relax
7. The group made an .... for the project.
   a) advertise   b) agree   c) advertisement   d) entertain
8. You need some .... after a long tiring day.
   a) ill   b) happy   c) agree   d) entertainment
9. They are looking for some .... for the poster.
   a) inform   b) information   c) entertain   d) happy

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. work - you - Can - with - I - ?
   ....
2. are - These - beautiful - posters - .
   ....
3. Fares - a bit - feels - sad - .
   ....
4. do - to - like - you - What - would - ?
   ....

6 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

A poster about animals

Guiding words:
(poster - rainforest - advertisement - information - kindness)

....
....
....
....
....
....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (5) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

مفردات أساسية

herd قطيع	hunter صياد	roar يزأر
leader قائد	route طريق / مسار	

Extra vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

India دولة الهند	powerful قوى	village قرية
net شبكة	mouse - mice فأر - فئران	community مجتمع
shocked مصدوم	needs احتياجات	chef طباخ / طاهٍ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	P.P
bite يعض / يقضم	bit	bitten
hurt يؤذى / يؤلم	hurt	hurt
explain يشرح	explained	explained
respect يحترم	respected	respected
nod يومئ برأسه	nodded	nodded

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

a herd of elephants قطيع من الأفيال	close to قريب من
after a while بعد فترة	along a path على طول طريق
in a difficult situation في موقف صعب	make a difference يُحدث فرقًا
hundreds of مئات من	got caught تم اصطيادهم

Definitions

تعريفات

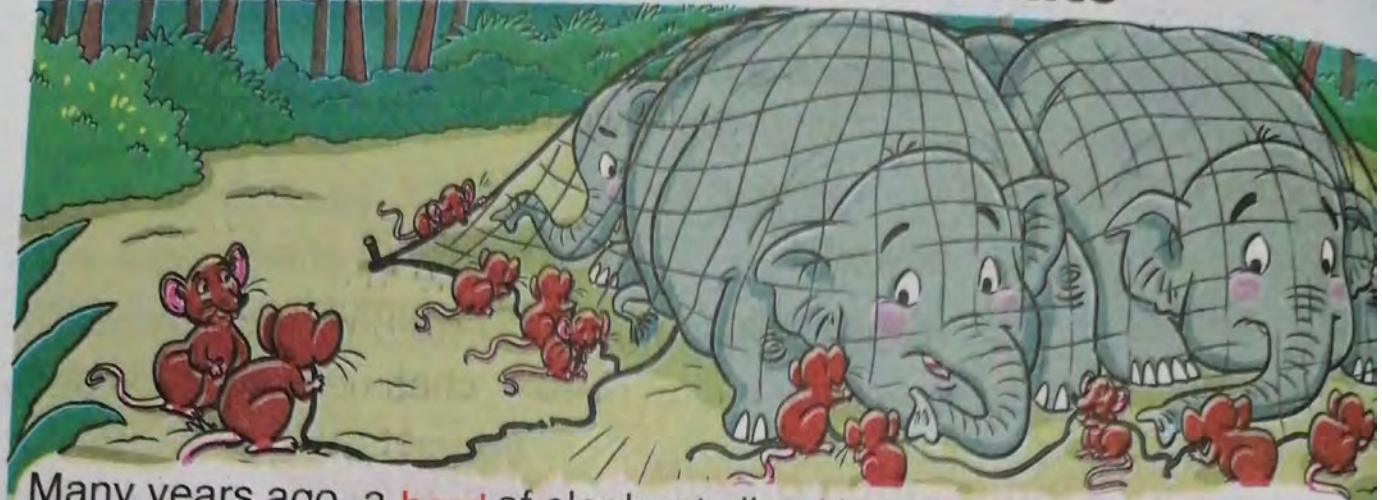
leader	the most powerful person or animal in a group, for example, a king or queen	قائد - زعيم
herd	a group of elephants	قطيع
hunter	a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals	صياد
roar	to make a very loud noise	يزأر
route	a path or a way to go somewhere	طريق

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

The elephants and the mice



Many years ago, a herd of elephants lived in India. They were happy, and their leader, the queen, was the kindest and best of the elephants. During the day, it was very hot, and the elephants liked to swim in the lake.

نذ سنوات عديدة ، عاش قطيع من الأفيال في الهند. كانوا سعداء ، وكانت زعيمتهم ، الملكة ، ألطف وأفضل الفيلة. خلال النهار ، كان لجو حارا جدًا ، وكانت الأفيال تحب السباحة في البحيرة.

Near that lake, there was an old village. Nobody lived in the village now, but there were hundreds of mice. Their leader, the king, was kind. The elephants and the mice lived well together.

القرب من تلك البحيرة ، كانت هناك قرية قديمة. لا أحد يعيش في القرية الآن ، ولكن كان هناك مئات الفئران. كان قائدهم ، الملك ، طيفًا. عاشت الأفيال والفئران معًا بشكل جيد.

But, one day, the elephants changed their route to the lake. This meant they walked along a path that was too close to the mice. Many of the elephants didn't see the mice. They walked on them and hurt them.

ولكن ، في يوم من الأيام ، غيرت الأفيال طريقها إلى البحيرة. هذا يعني أنهم ساروا على طول طريق قريب جدًا من الفئران. العديد من الفيلة لم يروا الفئران. وداسوا عليهم وأذوهم.

After a while, the mice said to the mouse king, "This cannot continue! It isn't safe for us!" The mouse king said, "Don't worry – I'll talk to the elephant queen," and he went to see her.

بعد فترة ، قالت الفئران للملك الفأر ، " هذا لا يمكن أن يستمر! هذا ليس آمنًا بالنسبة لنا!"قال الملك الفأر ،" لا تقلقوا – سأتحدث إلى ملكة الفيلة " ، وذهب لرؤيتها.

The mouse king met the elephant queen and explained the problem. She was shocked to hear what was happening and agreed to go a different route.

التقى الملك الفأر بملكة الفيلة وشرح المشكلة. لقد صدمت لسماع ما كان يحدث ووافقت على السير في طريق مختلف.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

"Thank you for listening and respecting our needs," said the mouse king. "One day, I hope we can help you if you're in a difficult situation."

قال الملك الفأر: "شكرا لك على الاستماع واحترام احتياجاتنا " يومًا ما، آمل أن نتمكن من مساعدتك إذا كنت في موقف صعب."

The elephant queen nodded, but thought, "We elephants are the most powerful animals in India – why would we need help from little mice?"

أومأت ملكة الفيلة برأسها، لكن فكرت، "نحن الفيلة أقوى الحيوانات في الهند – لماذا سنحتاج إلى مساعدة من الفئران الصغيرة؟"

A few weeks later, some **hunters** were watching the elephants and left nets. The next day, when the elephants went to the lake, they got caught in the nets. They couldn't move, and they **roared** and roared, making the loudest noise. The mice heard the loud noise and came running. Quickly, they started biting the nets. The elephants could get out!

بعد بضعة أسابيع ، كان بعض الصيادين يراقبون الأفيال وتركوا الشباك. في اليوم التالي ، عندما ذهبت الأفيال إلى البحيرة ، وقعوا في الشباك. لم يتمكنوا من التحرك ، وبدأوا يزأرون ويزأرون ، وأصدروا أعلى ضوضاء. سمعت الفئران الضوضاء العالية وجاءت تجرى. وبسرعة، بدأوا في قضم الشباك. تمكنت الفيلة من الخروج!

The next day, the elephant queen came to see the mouse king and said, "Thank you so much! You saved some elephants from the hunters! You showed us that all members of our community, from the biggest to the smallest, can make a difference." The mouse king felt like the happiest and proudest mouse in the village!

في اليوم التالي ، جاءت ملكة الفيلة لرؤية الملك الفأر وقالت، " شكرًا جزيلًا! لقد أنقذت بعض الفيلة من الصيادين! لقد أظهرت لنا أن جميع أعضاء مجتمعنا ، من الأكبر إلى الأصغر ، يمكن أن يحدث فرقًا. " شعر الملك الفأر بأنه الفأر الأكثر سعادة وفخرًا في القرية!

- Read the story again. Ask and answer with a partner.

1. Why did the elephants go to the lake every day?

....

2. Why did the elephants and mice like their leaders?

....

3. Do you think the elephants queen and the mouse king liked each other?

....

4. Why do you think the elephants roared?

....

5. How did the mice help the elephants?

....

Language

Superlatives صيغة التفضيل

- When we want to compare more than two things in adjective, we use the superlative form. عندما نريد أن نقارن بين أكثر من شيئين في صفة، نستخدم صيغة التفضيل.

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

the + adj + est

Note:

- Adjectives ending in (e), we add (st).
  nice → the nicest   fine → the finest
- Adjectives ending in (a vowel + a consonant), we double the last consonant and add (est).
  fat → the fattest   big → the biggest
- Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), we omit (y) and add (iest).
  heavy → the heaviest   happy → the happiest

e.g. Elephants are the biggest animals.

Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

the most (الأكثر) / the least (الأقل) + adjective

e.g. Elephants are the most powerful animals in India.

Irregular adjectives صفات غير منتظمة

Adjectives		Comparative	Superlative
good	جيد	better than	the best
bad	سئ	worse than	the worst
little	قليل	less than	the least
many / much	كثير	more than	the most

e.g. The elephant queen was the best of the elephants.

Help your child use the superlative form of adjectives.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم صيغة التفضيل للصفات.



Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The elephant queen is the .... of all.
   a) kind b) kinder c) kindest d) most kind
2. The elephant made the .... noise.
   a) loud b) louder c) loudest d) more loud
3. Elephants are .... animals on land.
   a) the biggest b) bigger c) biggest d) big
4. The mouse king was .... mouse in the village.
   a) the proud b) more proud c) the proudest d) less proud
5. The mouse king was the .... one in India.
   a) happy b) happier c) more happy d) happiest
6. Mahmoud is .... one in my family.
   a) good b) better c) best d) the best
7. Today is the .... day all over the year.
   a) hot b) hotter c) most hot d) hottest
8. Elephants are .... animals.
   a) powerful b) more powerful
   c) most powerful d) the most powerful

2 Correct the underlined word.

1. Boxing is the <u>difficult</u> sport. (............................)
2. Ali is <u>happy</u> boy in the class. (............................)
3. English is the <u>easy</u> subject at school. (............................)
4. My mom is <u>kind</u> person in my family. (............................)
5. Summer is <u>hot</u> season in the year. (............................)

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A herd of .... lived in India.
   a) elephants b) lions c) giraffes d) buffaloes
2. The elephants' .... was the kindest of the elephants.
   a) boss b) leader c) vet d) keeper
3. During the day it was very ....
   a) sunny b) cool c) hot d) cold
4. The elephants liked to swim in the ....
   a) river b) sea c) ocean d) lake

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What was there near the lake? ....
2. How was the leader mouse? ....

3 Read and match.

1. leader — a. a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals
2. herd — b. to make a very loud noise
3. hunter — c. a path or a way to go somewhere
4. roar — d. the most powerful person or animal in a group, for example, a king or queen
5. route — e. a group of elephants

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. January is often the .... month of the year here in Egypt.
   a) colder b) coldest c) cold d) more cold
2. Gameela is the .... girl in the class - she's always laughing.
   a) happier b) happiest c) happy d) more happy
3. That man is the .... chef in our city.
   a) best b) better c) more good d) good

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4. It was the .... vacation - it rained the whole time!
a) worst b) worse c) bad d) good
5. Lake Nasser is the .... lake in Egypt.
a) bigger b) biggest c) more big d) big
6. What's the .... subject in school?
a) easy b) easier c) easiest d) most easy
7. What's the .... sport?
a) difficult b) most difficult c) less difficult d) more difficult
8. A .... of elephants lived in India a long time ago.
a) bunch b) herd c) hard d) collection
9. One day the elephants changed their .... to the lake.
a) route b) right c) write d) rite
10. Some .... were watching the elephants and left the nets.
a) writers b) vets c) doctors d) hunters
11. The elephants couldn't move and they .... making the loudest noise.
a) breathed b) whistled c) roared d) walked
12. The Nile crocodile is the .... animal in Egypt.
a) more dangerous b) dangerous
c) less dangerous d) most dangerous

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the mice - the elephants - How - help - did - ?

....

2. is - English - subject - easiest - the - .

....

3. The elephants - like - the mice - their leaders - and - .

....

4. was - for - me - vacation - best - It - the - .

....

Lesson (6) WRITING A PERSONAL PROFILE

Key vocabulary مفردات رئيسية

personal profile	ملف تعريف شخص	introduce	يقدم
blog	مدونة	report	تقرير / يقدم تقرير

Extra vocabulary مفردات إضافية

brown hair	شعر بني	volleyball	الكرة الطائرة
wear braces	تضع تقويم أسنان	movies	أفلام
the countryside	الريف	dentist	طبيب أسنان
photography	التصوير الفوتوغرافي	hobbies	هوايات
the future	المستقبل	comments	تعليقات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Alex Modern School	مدرسة الإسكندرية الحديثة	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
meet up with friends	يتقابل مع الأصدقاء	What about you?	ماذا عنك؟
I'm quite tall.	أنا طويل إلى حدٍ ما.	take photos	يلتقط صورًا
keen on + (n / v + ing)	متحمس لـ	local club	النادي المحلي
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم	on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
Thank you for + (n / v + ing)	شكرًا لك على	I can't wait.	لا أستطيع الانتظار.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ

Hi everybody!
أهلًا بكم جميعًا!
How are things?
كيف أحوالكم؟
My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends.
اسمي داليا. أنا في الحادية عشرة من عمري ، وأعيش في الإسكندرية. أذهب إلى مدرسة الإسكندرية الحديثة. إنها مدرسة رائعة، ولدي أصدقاء رائعون.

I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family!
أنا طويلة إلى حدٍ ما، ولدي شعر بني طويل. أرتدي دعائم تقويم الأسنان. لدي أخ أكبر وأخت أكبر، لذلك يسمونني طفلة الأسرة!

I'm keen on walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside.
أنا حريصة على المشي مع عائلتي وأصدقائي، والريف القريب من المكان الذي أعيش فيه حقًا مدهش. أنا أحب التصوير الفوتوغرافي. أحب التقاط صور جميع الأشياء الجميلة التي أراها في الريف.

I also love listening to music from my country and all over the world. As well as this, I'm really into sports. I play volleyball at my local club, and we have games about once a month.
أنا أيضًا أحب الاستماع إلى الموسيقى من بلدي وجميع أنحاء العالم. بالإضافة إلى هذا ، أنا أحب الرياضة. ألعب الكرة الطائرة في النادي المحلي، ونحن نلعب مباريات مرة واحدة في الشهر.

On the weekend, I love going to the mall with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch movies with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home.
في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، أحب الذهاب إلى المركز التجاري مع أصدقائي وعائلتي، ثم أذهب إلى منزل جدتي لمشاهدة الأفلام معها. نتحدث كثيرا ، وهي تعيش بالقرب من منزلي ، لذلك من السهل عليّ الوصول إلى المنزل.

I think a lot about the future, and I think I'd like to be a dentist, like my dad. What about you? What do you look like? What are your hobbies? Write and tell me about yourself!
أفكر كثيرا في المستقبل، وأعتقد أنني أود أن أكون طبيبة أسنان، مثل والدي. وماذا عنك؟ كيف تبدو؟ وما هي هواياتك؟ اكتب وأخبرني عن نفسك!

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Read the personal profile again. Read the chart about Dalia.

Name: الاسم	Dalia
Age: العمر	11
School: المدرسة	Alex Modern School
What does she look like: الشكل	tall, long and brown hair
Her hobbies: الهوايات	photography listening to music
What does she do on the weekend? ماذا تفعل في العطلة الأسبوعية؟	goes to the mall goes to her grandma's
What are her future plans? ما خططها المستقبلية؟	to be a dentist

Writing a personal profile



- **Remember these tips when you write:** تذكر هذه الإرشادات عندما تكتب:
- Start with a greeting: Hi / Hey ابدأ بتحية ، مرحبًا :
  - Give your name, your age, and where you live. اكتب اسمك وعمرك وأين تعيش.
  - Describe what you look like. صف شكلك.
- Tell people about your hobbies: أخبر الناس عن هواياتك مستخدمًا هذه التراكيب:
  - I'm into … أنا أحب .....
  - I'm keen on … أنا متحمس لـ .....
  - My favorite hobby is … هوايتي المفضلة هي ....
- Ask them to write to you: اطلب منهم أن يكتبوا لك مستخدمًا هذه الجمل:
  - I can't wait to hear from you! لا أستطيع الانتظار لسماع أخبارك!
  - Write and tell me! اكتب وأخبرني!

Help your child write a personal profile.
طفلك أن يكتب ملف تعريف شخصي.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Dalia is .... years old.
   a) ten b) eleven c) twelve d) thirteen
2. She lives in ....
   a) Luxor b) Giza c) Sinai d) Alexandria
3. Dalia's school is ....
   a) great b) bad c) small d) terrible
4. Dalia has long .... hair.
   a) black b) blonde c) white d) brown

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is Dalia keen on? ....
2. What does she love listening to? ....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

dentist - weekend - movies - mall - future

On the 1) ...., I love going to the mall with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch 2) .... with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home. I think a lot about the 3) ...., and I think I'd like to be a 4) ...., like my dad.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dalia .... braces in her mouth.
   a) shows b) wears c) thinks d) changes
2. She is keen on .... with her friends.
   a) walked b) walks c) to walk d) walking
3. She likes .... photos.
   a) walking b) talking c) taking d) wearing

4. I like watching .... on TV.

a) movies b) blogs c) stories d) books

5. I .... volleyball at my local club.

a) stay b) make c) do d) play

6. What are your favourite .... ? - Swimming and running.

a) happy b) hobbies c) happens d) hippo

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. do - like - What - look - you - ?

....

2. the weekend - on - What - do - you - do - ?

....

3. I'm - on - in the - countryside - keen - walking - .

....

4. comments - your - for - Thanks - very much - .

....

6 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Your personal profile

Guiding elements:

- **My name is .... / I'm ...... / I live ....**
- **Write about your name, age, where you live, what you look like, your hobbies.**

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

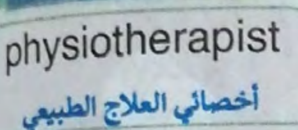
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7) STORY: HANA SAVES THE DAY

Key vocabulary









crawl
يزحف - يحبو



walker
مشايه



decorate
يُزين

Extra vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

awesome	مدهش	brain	مخ	community	مجتمع
worried	قلق	cerebral palsy	شلل دماغي	snack	وجبة خفيفة

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

come over	يزور	help each other	نساعد بعضنا البعض	in danger	في خطر
a group of	مجموعة من	a very helpful girl	بنت خدومة جدًا	at the end	في النهاية
pull up	يجذب لأعلى	go for a walk	يتمشى		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
decorate	يُزين	decorated	decorated
receive	يستلم	received	received
turn	يلف	turned	turned
crawl	يزحف	crawled	crawled
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed
pull	يجذب	pulled	pulled
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	celebrated

Listen and read.



Hana is a good friend who lives on my street. One day, after school, s
called me.

صديقة جيدة تعيش في شارعي. ذات يوم ، بعد المدرسة ، اتصلت بي.

"My new walker arrived. Do you want to come over and help me decora
it?" Excited, I ran to her house. As she gets taller, Hana receives a ne
walker every year. When the new one arrives, we decorate it. Hana's
favorite color is green, so we painted it green and decorated it with sta
and stickers. It looked awesome. "What should we do now, Reem?"
asked Hana.

وصلت مشايتي الجديدة. هل تريدين أن تأتي وتساعديني في تزيينها؟" كنت متحمسة ، وركضت إلى منزلها. ولأنها تصبح أطول ، تتلقى
مشاية جديدة كل عام. عندما تصل المشايه الجديدة ، نقوم بتزيينها. لون هَنَا المفضل هو الأخضر ، لذلك قمنا بطلائها باللون الأخضر
بالنجوم والملصقات. بدت رائعة. سألت هَنَا "ماذا يجب أن نفعل الآن، يا ريم؟".

"I think we should go to the park," I said. We often go for a walk to the
park after school. Hana's physiotherapist, Donia, says it's important fo
Hana to get fresh air and exercise her legs so they get stronger. At th
park, we met our friends. They said Hana's new walker looked great.
Our new friend, Rasha, asked Hana why she needed a walker.

أعتقد أننا يجب أن نذهب إلى الحديقة". غالبا ما نذهب في نزهة على الأقدام إلى الحديقة بعد المدرسة. تقول دنيا ، أخصائية
العلاج الطبيعي لهَنَا، إنه من المهم أن تحصل هَنَا على هواء نقي وتمرن ساقيها حتى تصبح أقوى. في الحديقة ، التقينا بأصدقائنا. قالوا إن
مشاية هَنَا الجديدة تبدو رائعة. صديقتنا الجديدة ، رشا ، سألت هَنَا لماذا تحتاج إلى مشاية.

"Well," she said, "when I was born, something happened to my brain
and it works differently to some other people's. My dad calls it my
special brain. The name for what I have is cerebral palsy." "Can you d
everything with the walker?" asked Rasha.

حسنًا ، عندما ولدت ، حدث شيء ما لعقلي وهو يعمل بشكل مختلف عن دماغ بعض الأشخاص الآخرين. يسميه والدي دماغي
الخاص. اسم الشيء الذي أصبت به هو الشلل الدماغي." سألت رشا "هل يمكنك أن تفعلي كل شيء بالمشاية؟".

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

"No, for eating meals I have a special chair at home, and for going out in the car, I have a special seat – it's really comfortable." Then we walked a little more with our friends. Hana was walking behind with Nadine, our other friend. Suddenly, a woman came running towards us, and she was crying.

"لا ، لتناول وجبات الطعام لدي كرسي خاص في المنزل ، وللخروج في السيارة ، لدي مقعد خاص - إنه مريح حقًا."ثم مشينا أكثر قليلًا مع أصدقائنا. كانت هَنا تسير في الخلف مع نادين، صديقتنا الأخرى. فجأة ، جاءت امرأة تجري نحونا ، وكانت تبكي.

"I can't see my little boy!" she said. "I turned around to get him a snack from my bag, and now I can't see him!" "How old is your little boy?" asked Rasha. "Only one. He can't walk, he crawls along the ground."

قالت "لا أستطيع رؤية ابني الصغير!". "استدرت لإحضار وجبة خفيفة له من حقيبتي ، والآن لا أستطيع رؤيته!" سألت رشا"كم عمر طفلك الصغير؟". "سنة واحدة فقط. إنه لا يستطيع المشي ، و يزحف على الأرض."

So we all looked in the grass, and the snack bar, but we didn't see him. Then, I noticed there was a group of trees behind where the woman was sitting. "Let's look over there!" I said. "And where's Hana?"

لذلك نظرنا جميعًا في العشب ، ومطعم الوجبات الخفيفة ، لكننا لم نره. ثم لاحظت وجود مجموعة من الأشجار خلف المكان الذي كانت المرأة جالسة فيه. قلت "دعونا نبحث هناك!". "وأين هَنَا؟"

Nobody knew. We all ran over to the trees, quite scared because it was near the road. "Adam!" shouted the woman, and she stopped crying.

لا أحد يعرف. ركضنا جميعًا إلى الأشجار ، خائفين جدًا لأنها كانت بالقرب من الطريق. صرخت المرأة"آدم!" ، وتوقفت عن البكاء.

There was Adam, pulling himself up on Hana's walker, and Hana was talking to him quietly. His mom was so thankful that Hana found him. We were all so relieved and happy, and we had an ice cream to celebrate!

كان آدم هناك ، يقف على مشاية هَنَا ، وكانت هَنَا تتحدث معه بهدوء. كانت والدته ممتنة جدًا لأن هَنَا وجدته. كنا جميعًا نشعر بالارتياح والسعادة، وتناولنا الآيس كريم للاحتفال!

- Answer the following questions.

1. What is special about Hana?

....

2. Why did Hana call Reem?

....

3. Where did Hana and Reem go together?

....

تجدون الإجابات في نهاية الكتاب

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adam was pulling himself up on Hana's ....
   a) bike b) leg c) walker d) chair
2. Hana was talking to him ....
   a) quiet b) quietly c) noisy d) loudly
3. His mom was so .... that Hana found him.
   a) sad b) angry c) annoyed d) thankful
4. We had .... to celebrate.
   a) juice b) an ice cream c) chocolate d) fruit

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How does her brain work?

....

2. What does her dad call it?

....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

snack - boy - crawls - around - runs

"I can't see my little 1) ....!" she said. "I turned 2) .... to get him a 3) .... from my bag, and now I can't see him!" "How old is your little boy?" asked Rasha. "Only one. He can't walk, he 4) .... along the ground."

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hana can't walk without a ....
   a) computer b) walker c) tablet d) phone

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2. A/An .... helps people move and walk better.
   a) surgeon b) vet c) physiotherapist d) doctor
3. Cerebral palsy is something happens to the ....
   a) teeth b) brain c) stomach d) eyes
4. When you want something to look better, you .... it.
   a) copy b) decorate c) draw d) move

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hana is a good friend who lives on my street. One day, after school, she called me. "My new walker arrived. Do you want to come over and help me decorate it?" Excited, I ran to her house. As she gets taller, Hana receives a new walker every year. When the new one arrives, we decorate it. Hana's favorite color is green, so we painted it green and decorated it with stars and stickers. It looked awesome.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hana is a .... friend.
   a) selfish b) naughty c) good d) bad
2. Hana receives a new walker every ....
   a) day b) week c) month d) year

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do they do with the new walker? ....
4. What did they decorate it with? ....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. new - arrived - My - has - walker - .
   ....
2. woman - Why - worried - the - is - ?
   ....

Writing Corner

We are all special

We are all different to each other. My friends and I are different. Shady is tall and wears glasses. He's very creative and likes drawing. Laila is very kind, she helps everybody. She has straight hair. She can't hear very well, so she wears a hearing aid. Amira loves drama and has curly dark hair. She also loves reading and always has books in her hands. Hesham is very sporty, and he's in the wheelchair basketball team. Seleem is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces.

Dalia's personal profile

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family! I'm keen on walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside.

Hamza's personal profile

My name's Hamza. I'm eleven, and I live in Giza. I go to El-Manar School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have black hair. I wear glasses. I have two brothers. On the weekend, I love going to the mall with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch movies with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home.

Review on Unit (4)

Describing people

braces	دعائم الأسنان	hearing aid	جهاز تقوية السمع
curly hair	شعر مجعد	mean = unkind	قاسٍ - غير لطيف
straight hair	شعر ناعم	glasses	نظارة
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك		

Ways of communication

finger spelling	لغة الأصابع	sign language	لغة الإشارة
lip-reading	قراءة الشفاه	written notes	ملاحظات مكتوبة

Suffixes

advertise**ment**	أعلان	kind**ness**	عطف / طيبة
inform**ation**	معلومات	happi**ness**	سعادة

Other words

cerebral palsy	شلل دماغي	leader	قائد
crawl	يزحف	movable elbow	مرفق / كوع متحرك
decorate	يزين	physiotherapist	أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي
herd	قطيع	prosthetic arm	ذراع صناعي
hunter	صياد	walker	مشاية

Language

Reported Questions الأسئلة الغير مباشرة

"How are you traveling to London?"

He **asked** me how **I was** traveling to London.

"Can you drive a car?"

He **asked** me if **I could** drive a car.

"**Do you hear** lots of sounds outside?"

He asked us **if we heard** lots of sounds outside.

Superlatives صيغة التفضيل

- When we want to compare more than two things in adjective, we use the superlative form. عندما نريد أن نقارن بين أكثر من شيئين في صفة، نستخدم صيغة التفضيل.

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

the + adj + est

Note:

- Adjectives ending in (e), we add (st).
  - nice ⟶ the nicest
  - fine ⟶ the finest
- Adjectives ending in (a vowel + a consonant), we double the last consonant and add (est).
  - fat ⟶ the fattest
  - big ⟶ the biggest
- Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), we omit (y) and add (iest).
  - heavy ⟶ the heaviest
  - happy ⟶ the happiest

e.g. Elephants are the biggest animals.

Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

the most (الأكثر) / the least (الأقل) + adjective

e.g. Elephants are the most powerful animals in India.

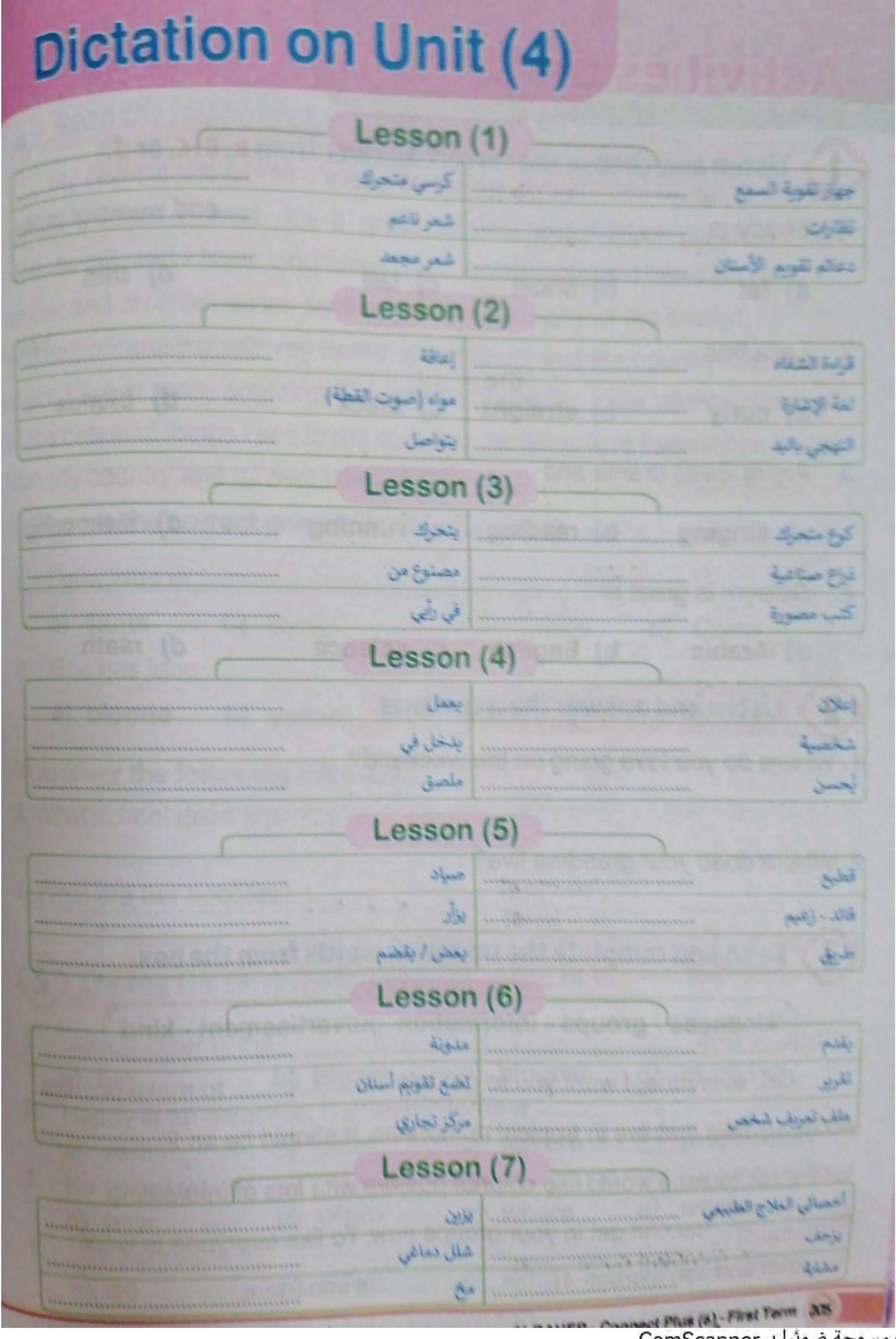
Irregular adjectives صفات غير منتظمة

Adjectives	Comparative	Superlative
good جيد	better than	the best
bad سيئ	worse than	the worst
little قليل	less than	the least
many / much كثير	more than	the most

e.g. The elephant queen was the best of the elephants.

Help your child revise unit (4).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.



Dictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

جهاز تقوية السمع	كرسي متحرك ....
نظارات	شعر ناعم ....
دعائم تقويم الأسنان	شعر مجعد ....

Lesson (2)

قراءة الشفاه	إعاقة ....
لغة الإشارة	مواء (صوت القطة) ....
التهجي باليد	يتواصل ....

Lesson (3)

كوع متحرك	يتحرك ....
ذراع صناعية	مصنوع من ....
كتب مصورة	في رأيي ....

Lesson (4)

إعلان	يعمل ....
شخصية	يدخل في ....
يُحسن	ملصق ....

Lesson (5)

قطيع	صياد ....
قائد - زعيم	يزأر ....
طريق	يعض / يقضم ....

Lesson (6)

يقدم	مدونة ....
تقرير	تضع تقويم أسنان ....
ملف تعريف شخص	مركز تجاري ....

Lesson (7)

أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي	يوازن ....
يزحف	شلل دماغي ....
مشابه	مخ ....

Activities on Unit (4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Shady is .... and wears glasses.
   a) fat b) short c) tall d) thin
2. Laila has .... hair.
   a) curly b) straight c) black d) blonde
3. Amira loves drama and ....
   a) singing b) reading c) running d) swimming
4. Seleem is great at ....
   a) Arabic b) English c) science d) math

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where do you love going on the weekend?

....

2. Where does your grandma live?

....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

kindness - groups - information - advertisement - kind

OK, everyone, I want you to get into 1)........................ to make posters about animals that live in tropical rainforests. It should be an 2)...................... for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting 3)...................... . You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget- 4)............................ is important.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family!
I'm keen on walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside. I also love listening to music from my country and all over the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dalia lives in ....
   a) Tanta b) Giza c) Alexandria d) Cairo
2. She has long .... hair.
   a) blonde b) yellow c) black d) brown

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What school does she go to?
....
4. What are her hobbies?
....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lake Nasser is the .... lake in Egypt.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) more big
2. Happy is an adjective, but happiness is a ....
   a) verb b) noun c) adverb d) preposition
3. He asked us .... sound we heard every day.
   a) how b) what c) where d) when
4. She asked me if I .... to school.
   a) go b) going c) went d) have gone

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. you - David - What - do - about - think - ?
....

2. think - I - future - a lot - about - the - .
....

7 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Asser's dad put down his spade. ( )
2. There will be wind chimes for relaxing voice. ( )
3. The boys had fun. ( )
4. Mayar's favorite thing is the fountain. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. The plan showed lots of .... new play equipment.
2. Asser can help plant the ....

8 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Your personal profile

Guiding words:

(name - age - school - hobbies - plans)

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Activities on Review (2)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Schools give children a good ....
   a) meal b) education c) uniform d) party
2. Children start .... school at 7 years old.
   a) prep b) elementary c) high d) KG
3. .... people move from place to place.
   a) City b) Country c) Nomadic d) Egyptian
4. Teachers have to be .... with the timetable.
   a) hard b) flexible c) fast d) nice

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did the elephants live?

....

2. What did the elephants like to do?

....

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

about - me - opinion - that - think

Sherif: Mom, I'd really like to understand English better!

Mom: What do you 1) .... about speaking English all day with me?

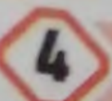
Sherif: I don't know, Mom. In my 2) ...., it might be difficult.

Mom: What 3) .... speaking English while we have our lunch then?

Sherif: To 4) ...., that's a much better idea!

Mom: Hooray! What about watching a movie in English this evening?

Sherif: I think that could work well. There's a fantastic movie I'd like to see. Thanks, Mom!



Read the following text and answer the questions.

Today, our teacher, Mrs Mona, asked us, "How are we different to each other?" That's an easy question to answer! Asser is very tall. He's taller than everyone else in the class. I'm very short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is very straight, and he wears glasses. Injy wears braces to help her teeth get straight. Amal uses a wheelchair because she cannot walk well. Amina has a hearing aid because she has problems hearing.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Asser is very ....

a) short   b) tiny   c) small   d) tall

2. I have .... eyes.

a) brown   b) blue   c) green   d) black

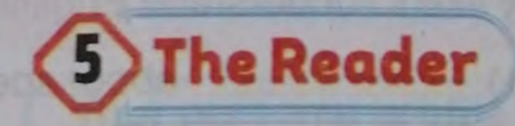
B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Waleed wear?

....

4. Why does Injy wear braces?

....



The Reader



Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Asser would love to do something to help. ( )
2. The parents have a surprise. ( )
3. Shady and his dad invited Asser to come to the club. ( )
4. Shady is Asser's cousin. ( )

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Complete the following.

1. Asser's parents were in the park, ...
2. The flower will smell ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My dad doesn't have a car. I .... go to school by car.
   a) always b) often c) never d) sometimes
2. Burj Khalifa is the .... building in the world.
   a) taller b) tall c) tallest d) the tallest
3. Playing volleyball .... me happy.
   a) makes b) make c) making d) to make
4. Dad asked if I .... to school.
   a) gone b) go c) had gone d) goes

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. roar - attention - Elephants - get - to - .

....

2. end - What - happens - the - at - ?

....

8 Write a text of SIXTY (60) words about:

Your opinion about school trips

Guiding words:

(In my opninion - First of all - In addition - Finally)

....

....

....

....

PROJECT 2

1 Look at the poster. What's your favorite idea? Why?

Kindness is important

Kindness in class

Write something nice about the person next to you. Then give it to him/her.

اكتب شيئًا لطيفًا عن الشخص المجاور لك، ثم أعطه له / لها.



Help your friend if they find their classwork difficult.

ساعد صديقك إذا وجد واجباته الدراسية صعبة.

Offer to help your teacher in class.

اعرض مساعدة معلمك في الفصل.



Share and take turns when doing group work.

شارك وتبادل الأدوار عند القيام بعمل جماعي.

2 Look at the poster again. Think of two more ways to be kind in class:

....

....

3 Work in groups of three. Read and think about the project

You are going to create a poster about being kind on the playground. Discuss your ideas with your group.

Help your child make the poster.

ساعد طفلك أن يصنع ملصق.

FICTION READER
A WONDERFUL SURPRISE

مفاجأة رائعة

BY EMMA WILKINSON
ILLUSTRATED BY MATT WARD

The Characters



Asser



Mayar



Grandma



The children's dad



The children's mom



Shady's father



Mrs Eman



Mrs Azza



Shady

Help your child identify the characters of the story.

The Story

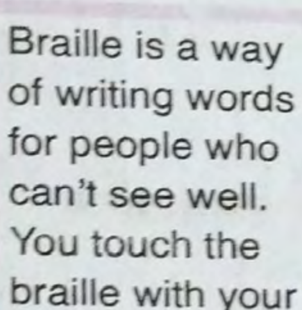
PICTURE DICTIONARY


audiobook
كتاب صوتي

An audiobook is a book which you listen to on a device. The words are spoken, not written down.


muddy
موحِل

When soil is wet, it becomes mud. When something is muddy, it has a lot of mud on it.


braille
طريقة برايل
(القراءة للمكفوفين)

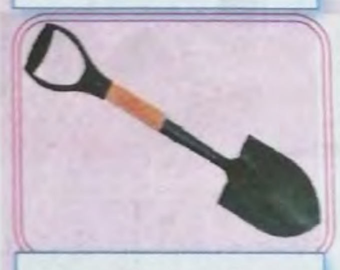
Braille is a way of writing words for people who can't see well. You touch the braille with your fingers to read it.


secret
سر

A secret is something that you don't tell anybody, or want anybody to find out.


bush
شجيرة

A bush is a short tree with a lot of branches and leaves.


shovel
جاروف

A shovel is a tool for digging.


garage
جراج - مرآب

A garage is the room of the home where people keep their cars.


trunk
الصندوق الخلفي للسيارة

A trunk is the area at the back of a car. You can put bags or large objects in it.


hug
يحضن

You hug somebody when you put your arms around them. We hug a person to show we care.


wind chime
أجراس الرياح

A wind chime is a decoration which makes a nice sound in the wind.

Part 1



It was the end of the school day, and Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly. He looked out of the classroom window for his mom, but he couldn't see her.

Mrs Eman, his teacher, took the children outside. Then Asser saw his grandma waiting at the school gates. He smiled and waved at her.

كانت نهاية اليوم الدراسي ، ووضع آسر أقلامه الجاف والرصاص في مكانها بعناية. نظر آسر من نافذة الفصل ليرى والدته، لكنه لم يتمكن من رؤيتها. أخذت معلمته الأستاذة إيمان، الأطفال إلى الخارج. رأى آسر جدته تنتظر عند بوابة المدرسة. ابتسم ولوح لها.

Asser loved it when his grandma picked him up, and he hugged her. "What a nice surprise! I didn't know you were coming today," he said. "Your mom is busy, so I'm here today," she smiled. "Now, where's your sister?"

They saw Mayar come out of her classroom. She was with her friends, and she was carrying a book. She looked very happy.

Mayar's teacher, Mrs Azza, came to talk to Grandma.

كان آسر يحب أن تصطحبه جدته،واحتضنها وقال: "يا لها من مفاجأة لطيفة! لم أكن أعلم أنك ستأتين اليوم".

قالت الجدة مبتسمه "أمك مشغولة، لذلك أنا هنا اليوم "الآن، أين أختك؟"

رأوا ميار تخرج من فصلها الدراسي. كانت مع صديقاتها، وكانت تحمل كتابًا. بدت سعيدة جدًا.

جاءت معلمة ميار الأستاذة عزة، للتحدث إلى الجدة.

Mrs Azza said, "Mayar has a new book. It has words that you can read to her. It also has words in braille that she can read herself."

"Thank you!" said Grandma. "We can read this together this evening."

"Are we going to your house today, Grandma?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, we are. Your mom and dad are busy. Should we make cookies?"

"Yes, please!" said Asser and Mayar.

قالت الأستاذة عزة: "لدى ميار كتاب جديد. لديها الكلمات التي يمكنك أن تقرئيها لها. كما أن لديها كلمات بطريقة برايل يمكنها قراءتها بنفسها." قالت الجدة "شكرًا لك!". "يمكننا قراءة هذا معا هذا المساء." سألت ميار"هل نحن ذاهبون إلى منزلك اليوم، يا جدتي؟". قالت الجدة "نعم، كذلك. أمك وأبوك مشغولان. هل يمكننا أن نُعِد الكعك؟" قال آسر وميار"نعم، من فضلك!".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

The children stayed at Grandma's house until the evening. Their parents arrived after dinner.

"Thanks for having the children, Mom," said their mom.

"You're welcome, Salma! I love having them here!" replied Grandma.

"Did you have a good time with Grandma today?" asked their mom.

'Yes, of course! And look at my new book from school!" said Mayar.

"It's great. Let's read it when we get home," said their dad.

Their mom and dad were happy to see Mayar's new book. When Mayar was a baby, her mom and dad learned braille. They helped her to read. Now, they love reading with their daughter in the evenings.

بقي الأطفال في منزل الجدة حتى المساء. وصل والداهم بعد العشاء. قالت والدتهم:" شكرا لمرافقتك الأطفال، يا أمي". ردت الجدة "على الرحب والسعة، يا سلمى! أجابت الجدة "أنا أحب وجودهم هنا!". سألت والدتهم "هل قضيتم وقتًا طيبًا مع الجدة اليوم؟". قالت ميار "نعم، بالطبع! وانظرى إلى كتابي الجديد من المدرسة!". قال والدهم "إنه رائع. دعونا نقرأه عندما نعود إلى المنزل "، كانت أمهم وأبوهم سعداء لرؤية كتاب ميار الجديد. عندما كانت ميار طفلة ، تعلمت والدتها وأبوها طريقة برايل. ساعدوها على القراءة. الآن ، يحبون القراءة مع ابنتهم في المساء.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly. ( )
2. Asser looked out of the classroom door for his mom. ( )
3. Mrs Eman, Asser's teacher, took the children outside. ( )
4. Asser saw his father waiting at the school gates. ( )
5. Asser loved it when his grandma picked him up. ( )
6. Asser's mom is busy. ( )
7. Asser and his grandma saw Mayar come out of her classroom. ( )
8. Mayar was carrying a pen. ( )
9. Mayar looked very sad. ( )
10. Mayar has a new book. ( )
11. Mayar's book has words in braille. ( )
12. The children stayed at uncle's house. ( )
13. Asser and Mayar have good time with Grandma. ( )
14. Mom and dad were happy to see Mayar's new book. ( )
15. When Mayar was a baby, her mom and dad didn't learn braille. ( )

2 Complete the following.

1. Asser saw his .... waiting at the school gate
2. Asser looked out of the classroom .... for his mom
3. Dad and mom learned .... when Mayar was a bab
4. The children stayed at .... hous
5. Mayar was carrying a ....
6. Mayar looked very ....
7. Mrs Eman was Asser's ....
8. Asser and Mayar have good time with ....
9. Asser put his pens and pencils away ....
10. Asser's mom is very ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Part 2



The family all got in the car to go home. As Asser went to put the school bags in the open trunk, he noticed something strange. He saw his mom and dad's boots there, and they were muddy.

"Their boots are really muddy. Have Mom and Dad been to a farm?" thought Asser.

Asser then got into the car, and they all went home.

ركب جميع أفراد العائلة السيارة للعودة إلى المنزل. عندما ذهب آسر لوضع الحقائب المدرسية في صندوق السيارة المفتوح، لاحظ شيئًا غريبًا. رأى حذاء والدته وأبيه هناك، وكانوا مُوحِلين. فكر آسر "أحذيتهم مُوحِلة جدًا. هل ذهبت أمي وأبي إلى مزرعة؟". ثم ركب آسر السيارة ، وذهبوا جميعًا إلى المنزل.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



The next morning, at breakfast, the children's mom said, "Grandma will pick you up from school again today."

"Are you going to be home late, Mom?" asked Asser.

"Yes, I'm very busy this week. I'll pick you up from Grandma's at seven o'clock."

"OK," said Asser.

"It's music club today, so don't forget your guitar, Asser. Mayar, you have pottery classes at lunchtime, so remember your **apron**."

في صباح اليوم التالي، عند الإفطار قالت والدة الأطفال: "سوف تصطحبكم الجدة من المدرسة مرة أخرى اليوم." سأل آسر"هل ستعودين إلى المنزل في وقت متأخر يا أمي؟". قالت الأم "نعم ، أنا مشغولة جدًا هذا الأسبوع. سأصطحبكم من منزل الجدة في الساعة السابعة. قال آسر:" حسنًا". قالت الأم "إنه نادي الموسيقى اليوم ، لذلك لا تنس جيتارك يا آسر. وأنت يا ميار، لديك دروس في صناعة الفخار في وقت الغداء، لذا تذكري المريلة الخاصة بك."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



"Can we listen to an audiobook, Mom?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, of course," her mom said.

While Mayar and her mom chose an audiobook, Asser looked out of the window. He was thinking about his school concert next week. He hoped his parents remembered it. He really wanted them to come and watch him. Asser wanted to ask his mom about the concert, but she looked tired. He decided to ask her later.

سألت ميار "هل يمكننا الاستماع إلى كتاب صوتي، يا أمي؟". قالت والدتها:"نعم بالطبع". بينما كانت ميار ووالدتها يختاران كتابا صوتيا ، كان آسر ينظر من النافذة. كان يفكر في حفل مدرسته الموسيقي الأسبوع المقبل. كان يأمل أن يتذكر والداه ذلك. كان يريدهم حقا أن يأتوا ويشاهدوه. أراد آسر أن يسأل والدته عن الحفل الموسيقي، لكنها بدت متعبة، فقرر أن يسألها لاحقا.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



On the weekend, the parents were busy again. Salma planned to take the children to Grandma's. It was a beautiful day, so Asser decided to take his football.

He went to the garage to get this football. Outside the garage, he saw his dad's shovel. It was covered in mud. Asser looked around the yard. There was nothing different there, no new trees or plants. Why was the shovel so muddy?

"That's strange," thought Asser.

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، كان الوالدان مشغولين مرة أخرى. خططت سلمى لأخذ الأطفال إلى منزل الجدة. كان يومًا جميلاً، لذلك قرر آسر أن يأخذ كرة القدم. ذهب إلى المرآب لإحضار كرة القدم الخاصة به. خارج المرآب ، رأى جاروف والده. وكان مغطى بالطين. نظر آسر حول الفناء. لم يكن هناك شيء مختلف ، لا أشجار أو نباتات جديدة. لماذا كان الجاروف موحِلًا جدًا؟ فكر آسر "هذا غريب".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. The family all got in the car to go home.
2. Asser put the school bags in the open trunk.
3. Asser saw his mom and dad's boots in the trunk.
4. The boots were clean.
5. All the family went to the club.
6. Asser's mom isn't busy this week.
7. Asser's mom will pick him up from Grandma's at seven o'clock.
8. Asser and Mayar have pottery classes at lunchtime.
9. Asser was thinking about his school concert.
10. Asser wanted his parents to come and watch him.
11. Asser's mom looked relaxed.
12. Asser decided to take his jacket.
13. Asser went to the classroom to get his football.
14. Outside the garage, he saw his dad's shovel.
15. The shovel was so muddy.

2 Complete the following.

1. Asser's mom is .... this week.
2. Asser saw his parents' boots in the ....
3. The boots were ....
4. Asser's mom will pick him up from Grandma's at .... o'clock.
5. Asser's mom looked ....
6. Asser decided to take his ....
7. Asser went to the .... to take his football.
8. Asser was thinking about his school ....
9. Outside the garage, Asser saw his dad's ....
10. It was a .... day.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Part 3



Asser and Mayar went to their grandma's house every day that week. Asser was worried about the concert. He really wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert. He wanted them to hear him sing and play his guitar. Did they remember about it? They were so busy. He practiced his song a lot because he wanted the concert to go well.

هب آسر وميار إلى منزل جدتهما كل يوم في ذلك الأسبوع. كان آسر قلقًا بشأن الحفلة الموسيقية. لقد
حقاً أن تذهب والدته وأبوه إلى الحفلة الموسيقية. كان يريد أن يسمعوه يغني ويعزف على جيتاره. هل
كروا هذا الأمر؟ كانا مشغولين جدًا. لقد تدرب على أغنيته كثيرا لأنه أراد أن تسير الحفلة الموسيقية على ما يرام.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story

أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة.

Later on, Asser was playing in Grandma's yard while Mayar listened to an audiobook. Asser's friend, Shady, came by.

"Hi, Asser. I didn't know you lived here," said Shady.

"It's my grandma's house," said Asser.

"Do you want to come to the park with me and my dad?" asked Shady.

'Yes, but I'll have to ask Grandma," said Asser.

Asser went inside. "Grandma, can I go to the park with Shady and his dad, please?" he said.

"Yes, of course. Take your water bottle!" replied Grandma.

في وقت لاحق، كان آسر يلعب في ساحة الجدة بينما كانت ميار تستمع إلى كتاب صوتي. جاء صديق آسر، شادي،.قال شادي "مرحبًا" ، آسر. لم أكن أعرف أنك تعيش هنا". قال آسر:" إنه منزل جدتي".

سأل شادي "هل تريد أن تأتي إلى الحديقة معي ومع والدي؟

"قال آسر:" نعم، لكن عليّ أن أسأل جدتي".

دخل آسر وقال "جدتي، هل يمكنني الذهاب إلى الحديقة مع شادي ووالده، من فضلك؟"

ردت الجدة. "نعم، بالطبع. خذ زجاجة المياه الخاصة بك!".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Asser and Shady had fun in the park. When they got tired, they sat down by some thick bushes. They drank some water and ate some fruit.

They were sitting quietly when they heard people talking.

"That sounds like your mom and dad," said Shady.

Asser looked around. Shady was right. It sounded like they were near – but where?

كان آسر وشادي يستمتعان في الحديقة. عندما تعبوا ، جلسوا بجانب بعض الشجيرات الكثيفة. شربوا بعض الماء وأكلوا بعض الفاكهة.

كانوا يجلسون بهدوء عندما سمعوا الناس يتحدثون.

قال شادي: " هذا يبدو مثل صوت والدتك وأبيك".

نظر آسر حوله. كان شادي على حق. بدا الأمر كما لو كانا قريبين - لكن أين؟

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Asser and Shady walked around the bushes. On the other side, there was a group of people working. Asser's parents were there, digging.
Asser ran over to his parents. When his parents saw them, they looked surprised.
"Asser! What are you doing here?" asked his dad.
Asser replied, "Shady and his dad invited me to come to the park. Grandma said it was OK."
Asser looked down and saw his dad's muddy boots. "But what are you doing here?" he asked.

سار آسر وشادي حول الشجيرات. على الجانب الآخر ، كانت هناك مجموعة من الأشخاص يعملون. كان والدا آسر هناك، يحفرون.
ركض آسر إلى والديه. عندما رآهم والداه ، بدوا متفاجئين.
سأله والده"آسر! ماذا تفعل هنا؟".
أجاب آسر، " دعاني شادي ووالده للحضور إلى الحديقة. ووافقت الجدة." نظر آسر إلى أسفل ورأى حذاء والده الموحل. وسأل " لكن ماذا تفعل هنا؟".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Asser and Mayer went to their grandma's house.
2. Asser was angry about the concert.
3. Asser wanted his parents to hear him sing and play football.
4. Asser practiced his song.
5. Mayar listened to music.
6. Shady is Asser's cousin.
7. Asser's Grandma asked him to take his water bottle.
8. Asser and Shady had fun in the club.
9. Asser and Shady drank some juice and ate dome fruit.
10. Asser and Shady were sitting quietly when they heard people talking.
11. Asser and Shady walked around the bushes.
12. Asser's parents were in the park walking.
13. When Asser's parents saw him, they were surprised.
14. Shady and his dad invited Asser to come to the club.
15. Asser looked down and saw his dad's muddy boots.

2 Complete the following.

1. Asser and Shady had fun in the ....
2. Asser and Shady drank some .... and ate some fruits
3. Asser's parents were in the park, ...
4. Shady and his .... invited Asser to come to the park
5. Shady is Asser's ....
6. When Asser's parents saw him, they looked ....
7. .... looked down and saw his dad's muddy boots
8. When Asser and Shady got tired, they sad down by some thick ....
9. Asser was .... about the concert
10. Mayar was listening to an ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Asser's parents looked at each other and laughed. His dad put down his **spade**. They showed Asser and Shady a large information board with a plan on it. The plan showed lots of exciting new play equipment. "We're making a playground with a **sensory garden**. It's for all the children in the neighborhood to enjoy," said Salma.

Shady's dad arrived. "Wow! This is going to be amazing," he said.

نظر والدا آسر إلى بعضهما البعض وضحكا. وضع والده الجاروف. وأريا آسر وشادي لوحة معلومات كبيرة عليها خطة. بينت الخطة الكثير من معدات اللعب الجديدة والمثيرة.

قالت سلمى"نحن نصنع ملعبًا ذو حديقة حسية. إنها لجميع الأطفال في الحي لكى يستمتعوا".

وصل والد شادي وقال. "واو! سيكون هذا مذهلًا " .



What's a sensory garden?" asked Shady.

"A sensory garden is a place where you can hear, see, and touch all kinds of interesting things," said Asser's dad. "Mayar and lots of other children couldn't use some of the equipment in the old playground. So, we're working with these builders to make a space that everybody can enjoy. There's a **fountain**, and there will be wind chimes for relaxing sounds. There will be wide paths, so it's easy for people in wheelchairs to enjoy the garden."

"We're planting flowers, too," said Asser's mom. "They will smell beautiful."

"This is awesome," said Asser. "Is this why you've been so busy?"

سأل شادي "ما هي الحديقة الحسية؟". قال والد آسر:" الحديقة الحسية هي مكان يمكنك فيه سماع ورؤية ولمس جميع أنواع الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام. لم تتمكن ميار والكثير من الأطفال الآخرين من استخدام بعض المعدات في الملعب القديم. لذلك ، نحن نعمل مع هؤلاء البنائين لتوفير مساحة يمكن للجميع الاستمتاع بها. هناك نافورة ، وسوف يكون هناك أجراس لاصدار الأصوات المريحة. ستكون هناك مسارات واسعة ، لكي يسهل على الأشخاص الذين يستخدمون الكراسي المتحركة الاستمتاع بالحديقة." قالت والدة آسر:" نحن نزرع الزهور أيضا. ستكون رائحتها جميلة." قال آسر:" هذا رائع". "هل هذا هو السبب في أنك كنت مشغولة للغاية؟"

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.



"Yes, it is! We didn't tell you about it because it's a surprise!" said his dad.
"I'd love to do something to help, too!" said Asser.
"Great!" said his mom. "The builders are putting in the big equipment next week, but you can help us plant the flowers."
"You can hang the wind chimes, too," said his dad.
Asser and Shady started helping. It was hard work, but the boys had fun.
"Thank you for helping!" said Asser's mom. "When this opens next week, you can come and show everybody around."

قال والده "نعم، إنه كذلك! لم نخبرك عن ذلك لأنها مفاجأة!". قال آسر "أحب أن أفعل شيئًا للمساعدة أيضًا!". قالت والدته "عظيم!". "سوف يضع عمال البناء المعدات الكبيرة الأسبوع المقبل، ولكن يمكنك مساعدتنا في زراعة الزهور." قال والده: "يمكنك تعليق أجراس الرياح أيضًا". بدأ آسر وشادي في المساعدة. لقد كان عملاً شاقًا، لكن الأولاد استمتعوا. قالت والدة آسر "شكرا لكما على المساعدة!". "عندما يفتح هذا الأسبوع المقبل ، يمكنكما المجئ واصطحاب الجميع حول الحديقة ."



The next weekend, the children's Mom said, "Mayar, we have a surprise!" "What is it?" asked Mayar.
"We can't tell you. It's a secret. Let's all go to the park," said Mayar's dad.
Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden.
"I love it here! The fountain is my favorite thing!" said Mayar.
"Thank you for helping us, Asser," said their mom, "and don't worry – we haven't forgot your concert!"

في نهاية الأسبوع التالي، قالت والدة الأطفال، "ميار، لدينا مفاجأة!" سألت ميار "ما هذا؟"." قال والد ميار: لا يمكننا إخبارك. إنه سر "دعنا نذهب جميعًا إلى الحديقة".
استمتع آسر باصطحاب ميار حول الحديقة الحسية.
قالت ميار"أنا أحب ذلك المكان! النافورة هي الشيء المفضل لدي!".
قالت والدتهم: "شكرًا لك على مساعدتنا يا آسر، ولا تقلق - لم ننس حفلتك الموسيقية!"

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

1 Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

1. Asser's parents looked at each other and cried. ( )
2. Asser's dad put down his spade. ( )
3. The plan showed lots of boring new play equipment. ( )
4. The parents are making a playground with a sensory garden. ( )
5. You can touch all lands of interesting things in a sensory garden. ( )
6. Mayar and lots of other children could use some of the old equipment. ( )
7. There's a fountain in the sensory garden. ( )
8. There will be wind chimes for relaxing voices. ( )
9. Asser would love to do something to help. ( )
10. Asser can help plant the vegetables. ( )
11. Asser and Shady started helping. It was easy work. ( )
12. The boys had fun. ( )
13. The parents have a surprise. ( )
14. Asser enjoyed showing Shady around the sensory garden. ( )
15. Mayar's favorite thing is the fountain. ( )

2 Complete the following.

1. The plan showed lots of .... new play equipment.
2. Asser's parents looked at each other and ....
3. Mayar and lots of other children couldn't use some of the old ....
4. There will be wind .... for relaxing sounds.
5. Asser can help plant the ....
6. Asser enjoyed showing .... around the sensory garden.
7. Asser and Shady started helping. It was .... work.
8. Mayar's favorite thing is the ....
9. The sensory garden is for all the children in the ....
10. The flowers will smell ....

General Activities



1 Look and write.

Asser - Grandma - Mayar - the children's mom - Shady - the children's dad


....


....


....


....


....


....

2 Complete the sentences with names from Exercise 1

1. She meets Asser and Mayar at the school gate. ....
2. She has pottery classes. ....
3. He is playing in a concert next week. ....
4. They are very busy. ....
5. He goes to the park with Asser. ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Put the events of the story in order.

1. Asser finds a muddy shovel by his garage. ( )
2. Mayar gets a big surprise. ( )
3. Asser's grandma takes Mayar and Asser to her house after school. ( )
4. Asser goes to the park with Shady and Shady's dad. ( )
5. Asser finds muddy boots in his mom and dad's car. ( )
6. Asser helps his mom and dad in the park. ( )
7. Asser finds out his mom and dad have a secret. ( )
8. Asser's mom says she and Asser's dad are very busy. ( )

4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences in your notebook.

1. Mrs Azza gave Asser a braille book.

....

2. Grandma and the children made a cake together.

....

3. Asser found some muddy boots on the seat of the car.

....

4. Mayar wants to listen to the radio in the car.

....

5. Asser took his bike to Grandma's house.

....

6. Asser practiced the piano for the school concert.

....

7. Asser and Shady sat by some tall trees in the park.

....

8. Asser and Shady heard Shady's parents talking in the park.

....

5 Ask and answer with a partner.

1. Why did Asser's parents have muddy boots?

....

2. What was Asser's parents' secret?

....

3. How did Asser find out his parents' secret?

....

4. How do you think Asser felt about his concert at the end of the story?

....

5. Why did Asser look out of the classroom window?

....

6. Where did Asser put the school bags?

....

7. What was Asser worried about?

....

8. What did Asser's parents show him?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

9. What did Mayar's parents learn when she was a baby?

10. What did Salma plant that day?

11. How did Asser's parents look when they saw him?

12. What was Mayar's favorite thing?

13. What was Mayar carrying?

14. How were the parents boots?

15. Who invited Asser to go the park?

16. What is a sensory garden?

17. What does the new book have?

18. What did Asser hope?

19. What were Asser's parents doing in the park?

20. Why didn't the parents tell Asser about the sensory garden?